

Understanding Quranic Arabic & Beyond



**Adopting Positive Characteristics
Leads to Peace of Mind**

Understanding Quranic Arabic & Beyond

ShaykhPod Books

Published by ShaykhPod Books, 2024

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

Understanding Quranic Arabic & Beyond

First edition. September 30, 2024.

Copyright © 2024 ShaykhPod Books.

Written by ShaykhPod Books.

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Acknowledgements

Compiler's Notes

Introduction

Nahw – Syntax

Different Types of Words

Ism (Noun) – اِسْمٌ

Status – اِلْعَرَابُ

Rafa (the Doer) – رَفْعٌ

Nasab (the Detail) – نَصْبٌ

Jar – جَرٌّ

Finding the Status of the Ism

Status: Heavy vs Light

Status: Flexibility

Fully Flexible - مُنْصَرَفٌ/مُعَرَّبٌ

Non-Flexible - مَبْنِيٌّ

Partly Flexible - مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ

Some Groups of Partly Flexible Words

Non-Arab Names

Feminine Names and Unique Masculine Names

Proper Names of Places

Pronouns

Independent Pronouns - الضَّمَايِرُ الْمُتَفَصِّلَةُ

Attached Pronouns - الضَّمَايِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ

Determining Nasab or Jar Status

Jaar and Majroor Fragment - جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ

Harf Nasab and its Ism Fragment - حَرْفُ النَّصَبِ وَإِسْمُهَا

Eedhafa Fragment - الإِضَافَةُ

Special Mudhafs - Zharf - ظَرْفٌ

Five Special Isms that appear as Mudhafs

Gender – الْجِنْسُ

6 Categories of Feminine Isms

Biologically Feminine

Isms that End in ة or اء or ى

Body Parts in Pairs

Specific Names of Places

Non-Humans Plurals

Feminine Set by Arabs

Number – الْعَدَدُ

4 Plural Types

Sound Masculine Plural

Sound Feminine Plural

Broken Plural

Plural by Meaning

Plurals in Arabic Grammar

Type – الْقَسَمُ

Common

Proper

7 Categories of Proper Isms

Fragments

Mawsoof Siffa - الْمَوْصُوفُ وَالصِّفَةُ

Pointers - اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ وَالْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ

Referee (Independent) Pronoun

Complex Pointer Fragment

Pointing to Eedhafa

Connector Letters - حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ

Noun Sentences - الْجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ

Grammatical Labelling - إِعْرَابُ الْجُمْلَةِ الْاسْمِيَّةِ

Sentence Level Labels

Noun Sentence - الْجُمْلَةُ الْاسْمِيَّةُ

Abnormal Noun Sentence Structure

2 Abnormal Patterns

2 More Abnormal Noun Sentence Structures/Order

Complex Sentences

Fi'l (Verb) - فِعْلٌ

3 Parts of Verb Sentence

The Doer – الْفَاعِلُ

The Detail – الْمَفْعُولُ

Mafool Beehee - الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ

Mafool Feehee - الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ

Mafool LaHoo - الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ

Mafool Haal - الْمَفْعُولُ الْحَالُ

Mafool Mutlak - الْمَفْعُولُ الْمُطْلَقُ

Verb Sentence: Past Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي

Verb Sentence: Present/Future Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ

Light Version مَنصُوبٌ Chart

Lightest Version مَجْزُومٌ Chart

Verb Sentence: Imperative – Command - فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ Prohibition - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ

Forbidding - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ

Negation vs Forbidding

Direct and Indirect Forbidding

Commanding - فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ

نُونُ التَّوَكِيدِ - Nun of Emphasis

الفِعْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ - Passive Fi'l

2 Parts of Passive Fi'l

Past Passive Fi'l

Present Passive Fi'l

نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ - Naeedul Far'il

Transitivity

الفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ (Intransitive) - Fi'l Lazim

الفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي (Transitive) - Fi'l Mootaadee

فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ - Incomplete Verbs

Complex Sentence Structure

Negating كَانَ Sentences

Ism vs Fi'l

Question Words

Negation

Negating Verb Sentences

Past Tense Negation

Present Tense Negation

Future Tense Negation

Negating Noun Sentences

Absolute Categorical Negation

Negating Tools for Noun and Verb Sentences

The Compound Ism

Miscellaneous Words

الاسْمُ الْمَوْصُولُ وَصِلَتُهُ - Ism Mowsool

الْجُمْلَةُ الشَّرْطِيَّةُ - Conditional Statement

أَدَوَاتُ الشَّرْطِ الْجَازِمَةُ - Tools that change Grammar

أَدَوَاتٌ غَيْرُ جَازِمَةٍ - Tools that do not change Grammar

الْأَمْرُ وَجَوَابُ الْأَمْرِ - Command and Response of Command

فاء السببية - فاء Sababiya

الْحَالُ – Haal - Condition/State

Haal as an Ism

Verb Sentence as a Haal

Noun Sentence as a Haal

التَّمْيِيزُ – Tamyeez – The Clarifier

البَدَلُ – Badl - Substitute

Sarf – Morphology

صَرَفٌ – Sarf - Understanding Sarf

المُجَرَّدُ – Mujarrad - Small Families

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 1

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 2

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 3

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 4

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 5

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 6

Determining the Sub Family

Extra Family Parts in Small Sub Families

المَزِيدُ فِيهِ - Big Families

فَعَلَ يُفَعِّلُ - Family 2

فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ - Family 3

أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ - Family 4

تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ - Family 5

تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

إِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ - Family 7

إِفْتَعَلَ يِفْتَعِلُ - Family 8

إِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ - Family 9

اسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ - Family 10

Irregular Verbs

Irregular Verbs - Mahmuzun مَهْمُوزٌ

In Big Families

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Small Families

1st Root Letter is a Hamza

2nd Root Letter is a Hamza

Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Mithalun مِثَالٌ

Small Families

1st Root Letter is و

1st Root Letter is ي

Big Families

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Ajwafun أَجَوَفٌ

Big Families

Families - 4 أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ and 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Families - 7 اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ and 8 اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Small Families

General Rules

Family Specific Rules

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Other Changes in Sub Families

Past Tense

Sub Family 1 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Present Tense

Sub Family 1 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Ism Tafdeel (Comparative/Superlative)

Ism Siffa (Adjectives for Permanent Qualities)

Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Naqisun نَاقِصٌ

Big Families

General Rules

Family Specific Rules

Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Other Changes in Big Families

Past Tense

Family 3 – Past Tense Chart - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Present Tense

Family 3 – Present Tense Chart - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Families – 5 تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ and 6 تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Passive Past Tense

Family 3 – Passive Past Tense Chart - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Passive Present Tense

Family 3 – Passive Present Tense Chart - فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

Commanding and Forbidding Forms

Family 3 – Commanding and Forbidding Chart - فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

Ism Far'il

Masculine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

Ism Mafool

Masculine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

Zharf

Zharf Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

Masdar

Masdar Chart for Family 5 – فَعْلٌ يَنْفَعِلُ

Small Families

Past Tense/Present Tense

Sub Family 1- فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 3 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Passives

Ism Far'il

Ism Mafool

Zharf

Ism Alatun

Sub Family 1 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 3 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 5 - فَعْلٌ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 6 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Other changes in Small Families

Sub Family 1 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Lafeefun لَفِيفٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Sub Family 2 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Lafeefun Makrunun لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُونٌ

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Sub Family 2 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Irregular Verbs - Moodaarefun مُضَاعَفٌ

Big Families

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Other Changes in all Families

Family 4 – Past Tense Chart - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 4 – Present Tense Chart - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Small Families

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Other Changes in all Families

Sub Family 1 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 1 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Making Moodaarefun Light and Lightest

Light and Lightest Present Tense Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Commanding and Forbidding Versions

Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Four Letter Roots - الْفِعْلُ الرَّبَاعِيُّ

Small Families with 4 Root Letters

Big Families with 4 Root Letters

Using a Dictionary

Analysis of Some Surahs

Surah 114 An Nas

Surah 113 Al Falaq

Surah 112 Al Ikhlas

Surah 111 Al Masad

Surah 110 An Nasr

Vocabulary List

Nouns

General Isms

Ism Siffa – Descriptions

Ism Tafdeel – Comparatives

Ism Charts

Masculine Chart

Feminine Chart

Independent and Attached Pronoun Chart

Common Jaars (Harf of Jars)

Harf of Nasab Table

Special Mudhaf (Zharf) Chart – 1

Special Mudhaf Chart – 2

Five Special Isms that appear as Mudhafs

Body Parts in Pairs

Feminine Set by Arabs

Some Broken Plurals

Plural by Meaning Examples

Pointer Table for Close/Near

Pointer Table for Far

Chart for Dual Pointers

Light Version Chart

Lightest Version Chart

Some Harfs of Ataf

Some Question Words

Ism Mowsool Chart

Expressing Wish/Desire Words

Numbers in the Quran

Ordinal Numbers in the Quran

Fractions in the Quran

Verbs

Family Parts

Small Families – Regular Verbs

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Sub Family 5 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Sub Family 6 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Small Families – Irregular Verbs

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Big Families – Regular Verbs

Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Family 9 - اِفْعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Big Families – Irregular Verbs

Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 4 - أَفْعَلٌ يَفْعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Family 9 - اِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

Ajwafun - أَجَوَفٌ

Naqisun - نَاقِصٌ

Lafeefun Mafrukun - لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

Verbs and Prepositions

Incomplete Verbs which make Noun Sentences

Some Fi'l Shuruee

Some Fi'ls that use a Tamyeez

Conclusion

Over 500 Free eBooks on Good Character

Other ShaykhPod Media

Acknowledgements

All praises are for Allah, the Exalted, Lord of the worlds, who has given us the inspiration, opportunity and strength to complete this volume. Blessings and peace be upon the Holy Prophet Muhammad whose path has been chosen by Allah, the Exalted, for the salvation of mankind.

We would like to express our deepest appreciation to the entire ShaykhPod family, especially our little star, Yusuf, whose continued support and advice has inspired the development of ShaykhPod Books. And a special thanks to our brother, Hasan, whose dedicated support has elevated ShaykhPod to new and exciting heights which seemed impossible at one stage.

We pray that Allah, the Exalted, completes His favour on us and accepts each letter of this book in His august court and allows it to testify on our behalf on the Last Day.

All praise to Allah, the Exalted, Lord of the worlds and endless blessings and peace by upon the Holy Prophet Muhammad, on his blessed Household and Companions, may Allah be pleased with them all.

Compiler's Notes

We have tried diligently to do justice in this volume however if there are any short falls found then the compiler is personally and solely responsible for them.

We accept the possibility of faults and shortcomings in an effort to complete such a difficult task. We might have unconsciously stumbled and committed errors for which we ask for indulgence and forgiveness of our readers and the drawing of our attention thereto will be appreciated. We earnestly invite constructive suggestions which can be made to ShaykhPod.Books@gmail.com.

Introduction

The aim of this book and curriculum is twofold:

1. Learning the foundations of Arabic grammar so that one can easily recite the Holy Quran and read the Hadiths of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, in Arabic and with understanding, with the hope this leads to acting on these two sources of guidance.
2. Taking a first strong step in understanding Arabic grammar so that one can study Arabic texts, such as interpretations of the Holy Quran and the Hadiths of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him.

Therefore, this curriculum has been structured to achieve these two aims. Anything beyond the scope of these two aims has been omitted and should be pursued by those interested, after completing this curriculum.

A Video series has been created which goes through this curriculum in detail and can be viewed with the following link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

We highly recommend using the Table of Contents Sidebar in order to switch between the relevant chapters throughout the book and the Vocabulary List chapter at the end.

Nahw – Syntax

“The Arrangement of words and phrases to create a well-formed sentence”

Different Types of Words

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

There are 3 word types in Arabic:

1. Ism (Noun) - اِسْمٌ
2. Fi'l (Verb) - فِعْلٌ
3. Harf (Particle) - حَرْفٌ

Ism (Noun) - اِسْمٌ

Noun – including idea, place, thing, adverb and adjective

Can be:

1. Common e.g. Garden
2. Specific - Yusuf (name of a person)

Idea – intangible things e.g. information, knowledge, education

Adverb – describes a verb e.g. quickly, badly,

Adjective – describes a noun e.g. cold, tall, loud, angry

Fi'l (Verb) - فَعْلٌ

A doing Verb – Past, Present or Future tense used (Present and Future tense combined in Arabic)

Harf (Particle) - حَرْفٌ

A word which is completed when an Ism or a Fi'l comes after it.

e.g. if, until, unless, from

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

إِسْمٌ - Ism (Noun)

Ism has 4 properties

1. Status - الإِعْرَابُ

2. Number - العَدَدُ

3. Gender - الْجِنْسُ

4. Type - الْقِسْمُ

Status - الإِعْرَابُ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

The Status is connected to the role the Ism is playing in the sentence

Ism - has 3 Statuses

1. Rafa (the Doer) – رَفْعٌ
2. Nasab (the Detail) – نَصَبٌ
3. Jar – جَرٌّ

Rafa (the Doer) – رَفْعٌ

It is the Default Status of Ism – must have a reason to be Nasab or Jar Status otherwise it is Rafa

If an Ism is in Rafa status it is called Marfooun - مَرْفُوعٌ

Rafa refers to the one who does the action – the Doer

Examples

I bought a house – the Doer is “I”

She carried a bucket – the Doer is “She”

Yusuf went to school – the Doer is “Yusuf”

Nasab (the Detail) – نَصَبٌ

Gives information/details about the Action

If an Ism is in Nasab status it is called Mansoobun - مَنصُوبٌ

Example

Yusuf went to school yesterday angrily

(Doer) (Action) (Detail) (Detail) (Detail)

Jar – جَرٌّ

If an Ism is in Jar status it is called Majroorun - مَجْرُورٌ

This Status is used after the word “of” in the English translation

Example:

Owner of the house

“the house” is the word after “of” – then “the house” would be in Jar status

Sometimes rearranging the sentence to observe the “of” in the sentence is required

Example

My house

“My house” is arranged to – “house “of” mine” – the word “mine” is therefore after “of” and will be in Jar status

When possession observed within a sentence e.g. my, our, his, her, etc, then it can be rearranged to show the “of”

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Finding the Status of the Ism

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Two Markers to indicate Status of Ism:

1. Ending Sounds
2. Ending Combinations

Both markers change depending on:

1. Gender – Male or Female
2. Number – Single, Dual or Plural

Unlike English, Arabic has separate words for Dual and Plural

Example charts below is using مُؤْمِنٌ (a believer) as a starting point.

Anything after the last letter - ن – is part of the status marker - whether it is a Harakat or extra letters

Masculine Chart

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنُونَ	مُؤْمِنَانِ	مُؤْمِنٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنِينَ	مُؤْمِنَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنٌ	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنِينَ	مُؤْمِنَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

NOTE: The Dual and Plural for Masculine & Feminine Ism Chart is the same for Nasab and Jar Status (Blue highlight) – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on.

Feminine Chart

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنَاتُ	مُؤْمِنَتَانِ	مُؤْمِنَةٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنَةٌ	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنَةٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

NOTE: The Dual and Plural for Masculine & Feminine Ism Chart is the same for Nasab and Jar Status (Blue highlight) – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on

Deeper Look

Singular Masculine

Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنٍ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Status Marker is on the last letter - ن – this is called “Ending Sounds”
(Blue highlight)

Singular Feminine

Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنَةٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنَةٍ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنَةٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Singular Ism becomes Feminine by adding ة at end of the Masculine version (Purple highlight)

The letter before the addition of ة - the ن - gets a Fatah on it (Blue highlight)

Status marker is on the last letter - the ة - this is called “Ending Sounds” (Red highlight)

Dual Masculine

The base is مُؤْمِنٌ - everything after the base is the Status marker

The base is still present in the below table – only the last letter in the base - ن - has been given a Fatah (Blue highlight)

Dual	Status
مُؤْمِنَانِ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنَيْنِ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنَيْنِ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Status marker – is made up of more than one letter – so it is called “Ending Combination” (Purple highlight)

Rafa – اِنِ

Nasab – اِنِ

Jar – اِنِ

NOTE: The Dual is the same for Nasab and Jar Status – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on

Dual Feminine

The base is مُؤْمِنَةٌ everything after the base is the Status marker

The base is present in the below table – only the last letter in the base - ت - has been given a Fatah (Blue highlight)

ة has become a ت also

Dual	Status
مُؤْمِنَتَانِ	رَفْعُ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	نَصْبُ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	جَرُّ - Jar

Status marker – is made up of more than one letter – so it is called “Ending Combination” (Purple highlight)

Rafa – اِنْ

Nasab – اَيْنِ

Jar – اَيْنِ

NOTE: The Dual is the same for Nasab and Jar Status – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on

Plural Masculine

The base is مُؤْمِنٌ everything after the base is the Status marker

The base is still present in the below table – only the Harakat on the last letter of the base - ن - changes (Blue highlight)

Plural	Status
مُؤْمِنُونَ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنِينَ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنِينَ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Status marker – is made up of more than one letter – so it is called “Ending Combination” (Purple highlight)

Rafa – وَنَ

Nasab – يُنَ

Jar – يَنَّ

NOTE: The Plural is the same for Nasab and Jar Status – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on

Plural Feminine

The base is مُؤْمِنَةٌ everything after the base is the status marker

The ن in the base has Fatah on it in all 3 statuses (Blue highlight)

ة has become a ت also

Plural	Status
مُؤْمِنَاتُ	رَفْعُ - Rafa

مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Status marker – is made up of more than one letter – so it is called “Ending Combination” (Purple highlight)

Rafa – اُتْ

Nasab – اِتْ

Jar – اِتْ

NOTE: The Plural is the same for Nasab and Jar Status – differentiating between the two will be discussed later on – Quick Tip - when determining status – look for Ending Combinations before looking for Ending Sounds

Questions

Decide if the following Isms are رَفْعٌ (Rafa) , نَصَبٌ (Nasab) and/or جَرٌّ (Jar) status

NOTE: in some cases نَصَبٌ and جَرٌّ look the same

And decide if the Ism is Masculine or Feminine

And decide if the Ism is Singular, Dual or Plural

Key

R: Rafa - N: Nasab - J:Jar

M: Masculine - F: Feminine

S: Singular - D: Dual - P:Plural

Ism	R/N/J	M/F	S/D/P
مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ			
مُؤْمِنَانِ			
مُؤْمِنَةٍ			
مُؤْمِنِينَ			
مُؤْمِنَاتُ			
مُؤْمِنَةٌ			
مُؤْمِنُونَ			
مُؤْمِنَاتِ			
مُؤْمِنِينَ			
مُؤْمِنٍ			

مُؤْمِنَتَانِ			
مُؤْمِنٌ			
مُؤْمِنَةٌ			
مُؤْمِنٍ			

Answers:

Is m	R/N/J	M/F	S/D/P
مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	N or J	F	D
مُؤْمِنَانِ	R	M	D
مُؤْمِنَةٌ	J	F	S
مُؤْمِنِينَ	N or J	M	P
مُؤْمِنَاتٌ	R	F	P
مُؤْمِنَةٌ	R	F	S
مُؤْمِنُونَ	R	M	P
مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	N or J	F	P

مُؤْمِنِينَ	N or J	M	P
مُؤْمِنٍ	J	M	S
مُؤْمِنَتَانِ	R	F	D
مُؤْمِنٌ	R	M	S
مُؤْمِنَةً	N	F	S
مُؤْمِنًا	N	M	S

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Status: Heavy vs Light

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Whether Ism is Heavy or Light is connected to its Status (not a property of Status – only a sub topic)

Heavy is the Default for an Ism

Ism only becomes Light for specific reasons – which will be discussed later

Heavy words make a “n” sound at the end – e.g. ظَالِمٌ (a wrongdoer) –
Zaleemun – end sound is “n”

To make Ism Light – remove the “n” sound at the end

2 ways to make Ism Light

1. If the Ism ends with double Harakat at end (which is heavy state -
Purple highlight) – then remove one Harakat only.

Heavy	Light
مُؤْمِنَاتٌ	مُؤْمِنَاتُ

مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	مُؤْمِنَاتِ
مُؤْمِنٌ	مُؤْمِنُ
مُؤْمِنِ	مُؤْمِنِ
مُؤْمِنَةً	مُؤْمِنَةً

2. In Isms with Ending Combinations (not Ending Sounds) that have

a ن at the end – remove the ن to make it Light.

Ending Combination with a ن has been highlighted purple

Heavy	Light
مُؤْمِنَتَانِ	مُؤْمِنَتَا
مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنَتَيَّ
مُؤْمِنَانِ	مُؤْمِنَا
مُؤْمِنَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنَيَّ
مُؤْمِنُونَ	مُؤْمِنُو
مُؤْمِنِينَ	مُؤْمِنِيَّ

ال - The

When **ال** is added to an Ism – it is no longer called Heavy or Light

Tanween (Double Harakat) and **ال** never come together

Example

المُؤْمِنُ - The believer - is wrong

المُؤْمِنُ - The believer – is correct

When **ال** is added only single Harakat remains (Yellow highlight)

In Ending Combinations with a ن – it stays on even when **ال** is added to it

Example

المُؤْمِنُونَ - The believer – is correct – the ن at end stays on

Questions

Decide whether the following Isms are Light, Heavy or Neither (because of ال)

Key:

L: Light – H: Heavy – N: Neither (because of ال)

Isim	L/H/N
يُقِيمُونَ (they establish)	
ضَيْرٌ (harm)	
الضَّلَالَةُ (misguidance)	
إِكْرَاهٌ (compulsion)	
سَوَاءٌ (equal)	
عَذَابٌ (punishment)	
مَسَاجِدَ (Mosques)	

Answers

Isim	L/H/N
------	-------

يُقِيمُونَ (they establish)	H
ضَيْرٌ (harm)	L
الضَّلَّةَ (misguidance)	N
إِكْرَاهَ (compulsion)	L
سَوَاءٌ (equal)	H
عَذَابٌ (punishment)	H
مَسَاجِدَ (Mosques)	L

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Status: Flexibility

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Flexibility of an Ism is connected to its Status (not a property of Status – only a sub topic)

The Flexibility which will be discussed is connected to Ending Sounds (not Ending Combinations)

Masculine Chart

Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنًا	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Feminine Chart

Singular	Status
----------	--------

مُؤْمِنَةٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنَةٌ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنَةٌ	جَرٌّ - Jar

3 Types of Flexibility

1. Fully Flexible - مُنْصَرِفٌ / مُعْرَبٌ
2. Non-Flexible - مَبْنِيٌّ
3. Partly Flexible - مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ

Fully Flexible - مُنْصَرِفٌ / مُعْرَبٌ

Default State is Fully flexible

Fully flexible – Single Ism has 3 different endings (appearances) for 3 different Statuses – see table below

Example

مُؤْمِنٌ – A Fully flexible Ism

Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنٍ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Non-Flexible - مَبْنِيٌّ

They do not show their Status in all 3 appearances i.e. in all 3 statuses they look the same

Words ending in Alif Maksura ى or a Alif ا are Non-flexible

Examples

مَتَّى – عِيسَى

In all 3 statuses it appears the same

Ism	Status
عِيسَى	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
عِيسَى	نَصَبٌ - Nasab

عَيْسَى	جَرُّ - Jar
---------	-------------

Ism	Status
مَتَى	رَفْعُ - Rafa
مَتَى	نَصْبُ - Nasab
مَتَى	جَرُّ - Jar

How to determine the Status of Non-flexible Isms will be discussed later on

مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ - Partly Flexible

Status is shown in 2 appearances only (not 3 appearances like Fully flexible)

Only shows – dhamma ِ or Fatah َ

Never shows Tanween– as they are Light (not Heavy)

Example

Ism	Status
إِبْرَاهِيمُ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
إِبْرَاهِيمَ	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
إِبْرَاهِيمَ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah (Blue highlight)

Differentiating between Nasab and Jar will be discussed later on

2 Ways to Turn Partly Flexible into Fully Flexible Isms:

1. By adding ال (which means “the”) on it

Example

ثَمُودُ is Partly flexible but can become Fully flexible when putting ال on it

الْثَمُودُ – Fully Flexible

2. By making the Ism a Mudhaf (this will be discussed later on)

Some Groups of Partly Flexible Words

1. Non-Arab Names (Arabic names are Fully flexible)
2. Feminine Names and Unique Masculine Names
3. Proper Names of Places

Non-Arab Names

Arabic names are Fully flexible

Non-Arab names are Partly flexible

Exception = Three letter name with Sukoon in the middle = Fully flexible

even if it is non-Arab name e.g. لُوطٌ

Examples

Non-Arabic Name	Status
سُلَيْمَنُ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
سُلَيْمَنَ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
سُلَيْمَنْ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah َ on last letter (Blue highlight)

And never have a Tanween because they are Light (not Heavy)

Arabic Name (Fully Flexible)	Status
مُحَمَّدٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُحَمَّدٍ	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
مُحَمَّدٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Non-Arabic Name (Fully flexible example)	Status
لُوطٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
لُوطٍ	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
لُوطٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Non-Arabic names made of 3 letters with Sukoon in middle = Fully flexible

Feminine Names and Unique Masculine Names

All Feminine Names are Partly Flexible

Unique Masculine Names –have no female counterpart = Partly flexible

Exception = Three letter name with Sukoon in the middle = Fully flexible even if it is female or unique masculine name

Feminine Name	Status
حَفْصَة	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
حَفْصَة	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
حَفْصَة	جَرٌّ - Jar

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah َ on last letter (Blue highlight)

And never have a Tanween because they are Light (not Heavy)

Unique Masculine Name	Status
عُمَرُ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
عُمَر	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
عُمَر	جَرٌّ - Jar

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah َ on last letter (Blue highlight)

And never have a Tanween because they are Light (not Heavy)

Proper Names of Places

Proper (not Common)

If it has **ال** on it = Fully flexible

Exception = Three letter name of place with Sukoon in the middle = Fully flexible

Examples

Proper Name of Place	Status
ثَمُودُ	رَفْعُ - Rafa
ثَمُودَ	نَصَبُ - Nasab
ثَمُودِ	جَرُّ - Jar

Partly flexible Isms – Nasab and Jar looks the same - Fatah **َ** on last letter (Blue highlight)

And never have a Tanween because they are Light (not Heavy)

Name of Place with ال on it (Fully Flexible)	Status
العِرَاقُ	رَفْعُ - Rafa

العِراق	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
العِراقِ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Questions

What are the following Isms – Fully Flexible (F), Partly Flexible (P) or Non-Flexible (N) and Why? (the last Harakat has been removed from each Ism)

Ism	Flexibility – F/P/N	Why?
العِراق		
ثَمُود		
عُمَر		
حَفْصَة		
عُمَر		
لُوط		
سُلَيْمَن		
مُحَمَّد		

مُؤْمِن		
عَيْسَى		
إِبْرَاهِيم		
مُؤْمِنَة		

Answers

Isn	Flexibility – F/P/N	Why?
العِرَاق	F	ال on it
ثُمَّود	P	Proper Name of Place
عُمَر	P	Unique Masculine Name
حَفْصَة	P	Feminine Name
لُوط	F	3 Letter Name with Sukoon in Middle
سُلَيْمَن	P	Non Arabic Name
مُحَمَّد	F	Masculine Arabic Name

مُؤْمِن	F	No reason to be Partly or Non-Flex
عِيسَى	N	Alif Maksura at End
إِبْرَاهِيم	P	Non Arabic Name
مُؤْمِنَةٌ	F	No reason to be Partly or Non-Flex

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Pronouns

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Pronouns do not follow the rules of Status discussed earlier

They do not show their 4 Ism properties (Gender, Number, Type and Status) in the standard way.

They are always Proper (Ism Type)

2 Types of Pronouns (the others will be discussed later)

1. Independent Pronouns - الضمائر المنفصلة

2. Attached Pronouns - الضمائر المتصلة

Independent Pronouns - الضمائر المنفصلة

They are a Ism by themselves

Do not attach to other words

Always Rafa رَفَع in status

Table below for Independent Pronouns shows Gender, Number and Grammatical Person

Independent Pronoun Chart

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ They	هُمَا Both of them	هُوَ He/It	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ They (Women)	هُمَا Both of them (Women)	هِيَ She/It	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ All of You	أَنْتُمَا You Two	أَنْتَ You	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ All of You (Women)	أَنْتُمَا You Two (Women)	أَنْتِ You (Woman)	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ We		أَنَا I	Both

Masculine Plural - Third Person هُمْ and Second Person أَنْتُمْ - is used for a group (more than 2) including Males and Females

Feminine Plural - Third Person هُنَّ Second Person أَنْتُنَّ only used for a group (more than 2) of Females only

الضمائر المتصلة - Attached Pronouns

Each Independent Pronoun comes in the form of an Attached Pronoun

They attach to: Harf, Fi'l or Ism

The Attached pronoun is always: Nasab نَصَبٌ or Jar جَرٌّ Status (never Rafa رَفْعٌ)

Determining if Attached Pronoun is Nasab or Jar will be discussed later on

Independent and Attached Pronoun Chart

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُمْ Attached Pronouns هُمْ هِمْ They	هُمَا Attached Pronouns هُمَا هِمَا Both of them	هُوَ Attached Pronouns هُوَ هُوَ He/It	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ Attached Pronouns هُنَّ هِنَّ They (Women)	هُمَا Attached Pronouns هُمَا هِمَا Both of them (Women)	هِيَ Attached Pronoun هَا She/It	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ Attached Pronoun كُمْ All of You	أَنْتُمَا Attached Pronoun كُمَا You Two	أَنْتَ Attached Pronoun كَ You	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	Feminine
	Attached Pronoun	Attached Pronoun	Attached Pronoun	
	كُنَّ	كُمَا	كِ	
	All of You (Women)	You Two (Women)	You	
First Person	نَحْنُ		أَنَا	Both
	Attached Pronoun		Attached Pronouns	
	نَا		نِي (Nasab)	
	We		ي (Jar)	
			ا	

Attached Pronouns look the same in Nasab and Jar Status – except أَنَا version (Yellow highlight)

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Determining Nasab or Jar Status

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Fragments are more than a word but less than a sentence

Understanding the following 3 Fragments will help in identifying whether the Status of an Ism is Nasab **نَصَبٌ** or Jar **جَرٌّ**

1. Jaar and Majroor - **جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ** (Fragment between Ism and Harf)
2. Harf Nasab and its Ism - **حَرْفُ النَّصَبِ وَإِسْمُهَا** (Fragment between Ism and Harf)
3. Eedhafa - **الإِضَافَةُ** (Fragment between Ism and Ism)

جَارٌ وَمَجْرُورٌ - Jar and Majroor Fragment

Jaar (aka Harf of Jar) is a Harf which makes the next Ism in the Jar status (this Ism is now called Majroor)

The Jaar and Majroor are always next to each other

Jaar only works on Ism – not a Fi'l or Harf

Table of Common Jaars (Harf of Jars)

Jaar (Harf of Jar)	Meaning	Jaar (Harf of Jar)	Meaning
بِ	With	عَنْ	About/Away From
تَ	I Swear by (used for Allah SWT only)	عَلَى	Upon/On/Against
كَ	Like (comparison)	حَتَّى	Until
لِ / لَ	For (possession)	إِلَى	To/Towards
وَ	I Swear by	مُنْذُ	Since/For
مِنْ	From	مُذْ	Since
فِي	In	خِلَا	Except
رُبَّ	Maybe	حَاشَا	Except

عَدَا	Except
-------	--------

All of these Harfs – make the next Ism in Jar Status

وَ – لَ – كَ – تَ – بِ – attach directly to next word

لِ – usually with a Kasra – but takes a Fatah – لَ – when it comes before an Attached Pronouns – except for يِ

Examples

إِلَيْكَ – To/towards you

إِلَى – Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

لَكَ – Majroor – it is an Attached pronoun - so attached pronoun لَكَ is in Jar Status - even with the Fatah on it!

عَلَى هُدًى – Upon guidance

عَلَى - Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

هُدًى – Majroor - An Ism which is in Jar Status

لَهُمْ – For them/they have

لَ – Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

هُمْ – Majroor - An Attached pronoun – so attached pronoun is in Jar status

فِي الْأَرْضِ – In the Earth

فِي – Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

الْأَرْضِ – Majroor - An Ism which is in Jar status

كَعَصْفٍ – Like straw

كَ – Jaar/Harf of Jar – makes next Ism in Jar status

عَصْفٍ – Majroor - An Ism which is in Jar status

حَرْفُ النَّصَبِ وَاسْمُهَا - Harf Nasab and its Ism Fragment

Fragment between Ism and Harf

Harf of Nasab puts its Ism in the Nasab status (it always needs an Ism to act on – it will never be alone)

Harf of Nasab and its Ism can have other words in between them (unlike the Jaar/Harf of Jar and Majroor which are always next to each other)

Harf of Nasab only connects to an Ism (not a Fi'l)

Harf of Nasab Table

Harf of Nasab	Meaning	Harf of Nasab	Meaning
إِنَّ	Certainly/No Doubt	لَكِنَّ	However
أَنَّ	That	لَعَلَّ	Perhaps, So that, Hopefully
كَأَنَّ	As Though	لَيْتَ	If Only
بِأَنَّ	Because	لِأَنَّ	Because

Examples

إِنَّهُمْ – Certainly, they

إِنَّ - Harf of Nasab – makes its Ism in Nasab status

هُم - Ism of the Harf of Nasab – It is an Attached pronoun – so it is in Nasab status

أَنَّ لَهُمْ جَنَّاتٍ – that, for them, are gardens

أَنَّ - Harf of Nasab – makes its Ism in Nasab status

جَنَّاتٍ - Ism of the Harf of Nasab – It is an Ism – so it is in Nasab status

As this Ism is a Feminine Plural Ending combination (Yellow highlight) – it can be in Nasab or Jar status – as both look the same – but as it is an Ism of the Harf of Nasab – it is Nasab in status

Gap between Harf of Nasab أَنَّ and its Ism جَنَّاتٍ (which is Nasab)

Unlike Jaar/Harf of Jar and Majroor – which always come next to each other

لَيْتَنِي – If only, I

لَيْتَ Harf of Nasab - makes its Ism in Nasab status

نِي - Ism of the Harf of Nasab – It is an Attached pronoun – so it is in Nasab status

الإضافة – Eedhafa Fragment

Fragment between Ism and Ism

Eedhafa indicates possession

Example: Book of Allah (SWT)

Sometimes sentence needs to be rearranged to see the “of” possession word

Example: Yusuf’s House – becomes – House of Yusuf

Eedhafa made up of 2 parts:

Mudhaf – مُضَافٌ (NOTE: Partly Flexible Ism can become Fully Flexible when it becomes a Mudhaf) – can be any Status

Mudhaf Alai – مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ – is in Jar Status

Mudhaf and Mudhaf Alai always come next to each other (like Jaar/Harf of Jar and Majroor)

Conditions for Eedhafa Fragment

Mudhaf - مُضَافٌ – must be Light

Mudhaf - مُضَافٌ – must not have ال on it

Examples

أَصَابِعُهُمْ – their fingers

أَصَابِع - Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

هُمْ - Mudhaf Alai – it is an Attached pronoun - it is in Jar Status

عَهْدَ اللَّهِ – Covenant of Allah (SWT)

عَهْد - Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

اللَّهُ - Mudhaf Alai – It is an Ism – it is in Jar Status

NOTE: When speaking about the word اللَّهُ care should be taken to say “the name of Allah (SWT)” لَفْظُ الْجَلَالَةِ - instead of saying “Allah (SWT)”

زَوْجُكَ – Your wife

زَوْج - Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

كَ - Mudhaf Alai – it is an Attached pronoun - it is in Jar Status

ذِكْرُ رَحْمَتِ رَبِّكَ – a mention of the mercy of your Master

This is an Eedhafa chain (multiple eEedhafas connected together)

ذِكْرُ – 1st Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

رَحْمَتِ – 1st Mudhaf Alai – It is an Ism – it is in Jar Status

Also it is the 2nd Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

رَبِّ – 2nd Mudhaf Alai – It is an Ism – it is in Jar Status

Also it is the 3rd Mudhaf - it is Light and no ال on it

لَكَ – 3rd Mudhaf Alai – it is an Attached pronoun - it is in Jar Status

Special Mudhafs - Zharf - ظَرْفٌ

Some Mudhafs that do not always create the meaning of possession

Zharf ظَرْفٌ is connected to Time and Place (will be discussed in more detail later on)

The Special Mudhaf (Zharf) Chart – 1

Special Mudhaf	Meaning	Special Mudhaf	Meaning	Special Mudhaf	Meaning

بَيْنَ	Between	مَعَ	With	قَدَّامَ	Right in Front of
حَوْلَ	Around/ Surrounding	أَمَامَ	In Front of	لَدَى	In the Presence of
عِنْدَ	With/By/At	خَلْفَ	Behind	فَوْقَ	Above
مِنْ لَدُنْ	Especially From	وَرَاءَ	Far Beyond/ Behind	تَحْتَ	Below
قَبْلَ	Before	بَعْدَ	After	دُونَ	Besides/ Other Than/ Less Than

NOTE: These Special Mudhafs keep a Fatah at the end (Nasab status) unless a Harf of Jar comes before it (then the last letter of the Special Mudhafs will take a Kasra - Jar Status)

If they do not have a Mudhaf Alai – then they keep a Dhamma (Rafa status)

The Special Mudhaf Chart – 2

These Special Mudhaf do not refer to Time or Place (not Zharf) – so appear in any Status

Special Mudhaf	Meaning	Special Mudhaf	Meaning	Special Mudhaf	Meaning
بَعْضُ	Some of/ Part of	أَيُّ	Any/ Which	كُلُّ	All/ Each/

					Every
مِثْلُ	Similar	نَفْسُ	The Same	غَيْرُ	Other than/ Non

NOTE:

كُلُّ

If Mudhaf Alai is – Singular and Common – Meaning is “Each and Every”

Example: كُلُّ كِتَابٍ – Each and every book

If Mudhaf Alai is – Singular and Proper – Meaning is “Entire”

Example: كُلُّ الْكِتَابِ – The entire book

If Mudhaf Alai is – Plural and Proper – Meaning is “All”

Example: كُلُّ الْكُتُبِ – All of the books

Five Special Isms that appear as Mudhafs

Do not show their Status through Ending Sound

Show Status through a specific ending letter

Rafa Status – Normally ends with Dhamma – in this case word ends in –

و (waw)

Nasab Status – Normally ends with Fatah – in this case word ends in ا

(Alif)

Jar Status – Normally ends with Kasra – in this case word ends in ي (Yah)

As Mudhaf				
Non Mudhaf (Normal Version)	Meaning	جَرّ - Jar	نَصَب - Nasab	رَفْع - Rafa
أَبٌ	Father	أَبِي	أَبَا	أَبُو
أَخٌ	Brother	أَخِي	أَخَا	أَخُو
حَمٌ	In-Law	حَمِي	حَمَا	حَمُو
فَمٌ	Mouth	فِي	فَا	فُو
N/A (only comes as a Mudhaf)	Possessor of	ذِي	ذَا	ذُو

Understanding and recognizing these fragments help to differentiate between the Status of Isms, especially in certain cases where the Jar and Nasab status look the same

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Gender - الجنس

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Second of four properties of Ism (Status, Gender, Type, Number)

Default Gender for Ism is Masculine

Ism must fall within 6 categories to make it Feminine otherwise it is Masculine

6 Categories of Feminine Isms

1. Biologically Feminine
2. Isms that End in ة or اء or ى
3. Body Parts in Pairs
4. Specific Names of Places
5. Non-Human Plurals
6. Feminine Set by Arabs

Biologically Feminine

Isms that are Feminine naturally

Examples:

Mother **أُمُّ**

Sister **أُخْتُ**

Isms that End in ة or اء or ى

An Ism which contains 3 letters and then followed by اء or ى = Feminine

Most Isms end with ة = Feminine

But biology will always override any ending letters

Example: Angels are considered Males even though the word ends with

المَلَائِكَةُ - ة

Examples:

خَضْرَاءُ – Green (Colour)

الكُبْرَى – The Biggest (Feminine version)

الزَّكَاةُ – Obligatory Charity

Body Parts in Pairs

Both Singular and Dual Forms are Feminine

Isim	Meaning	Isim	Meaning	Isim	Meaning
شَفَّةٌ	Lips	أُذُنٌ	Ear	يَدٌ	Hand
قَدَمٌ	Foot	رِجْلٌ	Leg	عَيْنٌ	Eye
سَاقٌ	Shin	خَدٌ	Cheek	مِرْفَقٌ	Elbow
كَعْبٌ	Ankle	عَقِبٌ	Heel	مَنْكِبٌ	Shoulder

Specific Names of Places

Most Specific names of places are Feminine

Examples:

مَكَّةُ - Makkah

عِرَاقُ - Iraq

Non-Humans Plurals

All Non-Human Plurals are Feminine

Even if the Singular Version is Masculine

Examples:

أَصْنَامٌ - Idols (the Singular version is Masculine)

بُيُوتٌ - Houses (the Singular version is Masculine)

Feminine Set by Arabs

Arabic Term: مُؤَنَّثٌ سَمَاعِيٌّ

Some Isms are Feminine because the Arabs referred to them in that way

Isim	Meaning	Isim	Meaning
أَرْضٌ	Land	رِيحٌ	Wind
حَرْبٌ	War	دَارٌ	House
بَيْرٌ	Water Well	كَاسٌ	Cup
خَمْرٌ	Alcohol	سَعِيرٌ	Hellfire
جَهَنَّمَ	Hellfire (Partly Flexible – name of a Proper place – so it is Light)	سَمَاءٌ	Sky
نَفْسٌ	Self	شَمْسٌ	Sun
نَارٌ	Fire	دَلْوٌ	Bucket

سَبِيلٌ	Path	طَرِيقٌ	Path
عَصَا	Staff/Stick (non-Flexible)		

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

العَدَدُ - Number

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Third of Four Ism Properties (Gender, Type, Number and Status)

Isms have

1. Singular Version: مَفْرَدٌ
2. Dual Version: مُثَنَّى
3. Plural Version (more than 2): جَمْعٌ

Single and Dual are easy to recognise – shown below from the Muminun chart

Masculine Chart

Dual	Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنَانِ	مُؤْمِنٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa

مُؤْمِنَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنٍ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنِينَ	مُؤْمِنٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Feminine Chart

Dual	Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنَتَانِ	مُؤْمِنَةٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنَةٌ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنَةٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

4 Plural Types

1. Sound Masculine Plural - الْجَمْعُ الْمَذَكَّرُ السَّالِمُ
2. Sound Feminine Plural - الْجَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثُ السَّالِمُ
3. Broken Plural - جَمْعُ تَكْسِيرٍ
4. Plural by Meaning - إِسْمُ جَمْعٍ

Sound Masculine Plural

Sound = Original makeup (Singular version) of the Ism does not change
– only extra letters added at end (see table below)

Only used for Humans, Angels and Jinn

Used for a Group including Males and Females

Example

Singular - مُؤْمِنٌ

Plural	Status
مُؤْمِنُونَ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنِينَ	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنِينَ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Sound Feminine Plural

Sound = Original makeup (Singular version) of the Ism does not change
– only extra letters added at end (see table below)

Refers to Beings with Intellect e.g. Humans and Inanimate Objects

Example

Singular - مُؤْمِنَةٌ

Plural	Status
مُؤْمِنَاتٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Broken Plural

Original makeup of Ism is changed (Broken) – Looks different from Singular version

Look like Singular Words

There are some patterns followed when an Ism becomes a Broken Plural

Otherwise the Broken Plurals must be memorized in order to recognize them

Some examples of Broken Plurals

Plural	Singular	Meaning	Plural	Singular	Meaning
أَزْوَاجٌ	زَوْجٌ	One of a Pair	نِعَمٌ	نِعْمَةٌ	Blessing
نِسَاءٌ	إِمْرَأَةٌ	Woman	شُهَدَاءُ	شَهِيدٌ	Witness

أَفِيدَةٌ	فَوَادُ	Emotional Heart	أَنْبِيَاءُ	نَبِيٌّ	Prophet
-----------	---------	-----------------	-------------	---------	---------

NOTE: Broken Plurals can be Fully Flexible and Partly Flexible

Broken Plural with an Alif in the middle usually Partly Flexible Example:

أَنْبِيَاءُ – Prophets (PBUT)

Plural by Meaning

Isms which refer to a group so are considered plural

Some examples

Isim	Meaning	Isim	Meaning
خَصْمٌ	An Argumentative Group	آلٌ	A Family
جُنْدٌ	An Army	نَاسٌ	A People
قَوْمٌ	A People	قَرْنٌ	A Generation
حِزْبٌ	A Group	أَهْلٌ	A Family

Plurals in Arabic Grammar

All Non-Human Plurals – treated as Single Feminine:

- Non-Human Feminine Plural
- Non-Human Broken Plural

Sound Masculine Human Plural – treated as Plural Masculine

Sound Feminine Human Plural – treated as Plural Feminine

Plural by Meaning – treated as Plural Masculine

Human Broken Plurals – treated as Plural Masculine or Single Feminine

Human – refers to Human, Angels and Jinn

Examples:

All Non-Human Plurals – treated as Single Feminine

السَّمَاوَاتُ خَلَقَهَا – the skies, He created them

السَّمَاوَاتُ – Non-Human Feminine Plural

خَلَقَهَا – the attached pronoun هَا represents the skies – as they are considered single and feminine – just like the attached pronoun is single and feminine

نِعَمٌ خَلَقَهَا – Blessings, He created them

نِعَمٌ – Non-Human Broken Plural

خَلَقَهَا – the attached pronoun هَا represents the blessings – as they are considered single and feminine – just like the attached pronoun is single and feminine

Sound Masculine Human Plural – treated as Plural Masculine

الْمُؤْمِنُونَ خَلَقَهُمْ – The believers, He created them

الْمُؤْمِنُونَ – Sound Masculine Human Plural

خَلَقَهُمْ – the attached pronoun هُمْ represents the believers – as they are considered masculine and plural – just like the attached pronoun is masculine and plural

Sound Feminine Human Plural – treated as Plural Feminine

الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ خَلَقَهُنَّ – The believing women, He created them

الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ – Sound Feminine Human Plural

خَلَقَهُنَّ – the attached pronoun هُنَّ represents the believing women – as they are considered feminine and plural – just like the attached pronoun is feminine and plural

Plural by Meaning – treated as Plural Masculine

الْقَوْمُ خَلَقَهُمْ – The people, He created them

الْقَوْمُ - Plural by Meaning

خَلَقَهُمْ – the attached pronoun هُمْ represents the people – as they are considered masculine and plural – just like the attached pronoun is masculine and plural

Human Broken Plurals – treated as Plural Masculine or Single Feminine

الْأَنْبِيَاءُ خَلَقَهُمْ – The Prophets, He created them

الْأَنْبِيَاءُ - Human Broken Plurals

خَلَقَهُمْ – the attached pronoun هُمْ represents the Prophets – as they are considered masculine and plural – just like the attached pronoun is masculine and plural

Or

الْأَنْبِيَاءُ خَلَقَهَا – The Prophets, He created them

الْأَنْبِيَاءُ - Human Broken Plurals

خَلَقَهَا – the attached pronoun هَا represents the Prophets – as they are considered single and feminine – just like the attached pronoun is single and feminine

Questions

Identify how the following Isms are treated grammatically

Key:

SM: Sound Masculine Plural

SF: Sound Feminine Plural

BP: Broken Plural

PBM: Plural by meaning

H: Human

NH: Non-human

Gender	Which type of Plural	How is it treated Grammatically	Ism	Meaning
M / F	SM / SF / BP / PBM/H/NH		أَنْبِيَاءُ	Prophets
M / F	SM / SF / BP / PBM/H/NH		آيَاتٍ	Signs
M / F	SM / SF / BP / PBM/H/NH		أَنْهَارًا	Rivers
M / F	SM / SF / BP / PBM/H/NH		السُّفَهَاءُ	Fools

M / F	SM / SF / BP / PBM/H/NH		الصَّوَاعِقِ	Thunderclaps
M / F	SM / SF / BP / PBM/H/NH		الْحِجَارَةُ	Stones

Answers

Gender	Which type of Plural	How is it treated Grammatically	Ism	Meaning
M	BP – Human type	Single Feminine Or Plural Masculine	أَنْبِيَاءُ	Prophets
F	SF – Non-Human type	Single Feminine	آيَاتٍ	Signs
M	BP – Non-Human type	Single Feminine	أَنْهَارًا	Rivers
M	BP – Human type	Single Feminine Or Plural Masculine	السُّفَهَاءُ	Fools

M	BP – Non-Human type	Single Feminine	الصَّوَاعِقِ	Thunderclaps
F	BP – Non-Human type	Single Feminine	الْحِجَارَةُ	Stones

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

القَسَمُ - Type

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Fourth of Four Ism Property is Type (Gender, Status, Number and Type)

Words are Either:

1. Common - نَكْرَةٌ
2. Proper - مَعْرِفَةٌ

Common

Default for Arabic Words

General Isms/Words

Do not refer to something specific

Examples:

A car (not a specific car)

A house (not a specific house)

Proper

Specific Isms/Words

Refer to a specific thing

Examples:

The car

The house

Ali

Yusuf

7 Categories of Proper Isms

Anything outside these categories is considered Common

1. Words with ال (the) on them
2. Specific Names - اِسْمٌ عَلِيٌّ e.g. Names of people or places
3. Pronouns – الضَّمَايِرُ e.g. He, She, You
4. Pointers - اَسْمَاءُ الْاِشَارَةِ (will be discussed later)
5. Ism Mawsool - اَلْاَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُولَةُ (will be discussed later)

6. The One Being Called – **الْمُنَادِي** e.g. Calling Harf is **يَا** – the

thing called is Proper - Example: **يَا أَبَتِ** - O Father

7. If Mudhaf Alai is Proper – Mudhaf is Proper (if Mudhaf Alai is Common so is Mudhaf)

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Fragments

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

There are 5 Fragments

3 out of 5 have been discussed in “[Determining Nasab or Jar Status](#)” chapter

Remaining 2 will be discussed in this chapter

5 Fragments

1. Jaar/Harf of Jar and Majroor - **الجارُ والمَجْرُورُ** (Fragment between Ism and Harf)
2. Harf Nasab and its Ism - **حَرْفُ النَّصَبِ واسْمُهَا** (Fragment between Ism and Harf)
3. Eedhafa – **الإِضَافَةُ** (Fragment between Ism and Ism)

4. Mawsoof Siffa - المَوْصُوفُ وَالصِّفَةُ (Fragment between Ism

and Ism)

5. Pointers - إِسْمُ الإِشَارَةِ وَالْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ (Fragment between

Ism and Ism)

Mawsoof Siffa - المَوْصُوفُ وَالصِّفَةُ

Made of 2 Parts:

1. Mawsoof – An Ism
2. Siffa – An Adjective which comes after it (a describing word) –
adjective comes after the Ism in Arabic (unlike English)

Mawsoof and Siffa must match in all 4 Properties (Type, Gender, Status and Number)

Whether an Ism is Heavy or Light is ignored in Mawsoof Siffa

Examples

وَلَدٌ صَالِحٌ (A Righteous Boy not “the righteous boy” as it is common -
has no ال on it)

وَلَدٌ – “Boy” Mawsoof (Common, Masculine, Rafa, Single)

صَالِحٌ – “Righteous” Siffa (Common, Masculine, Rafa, Single)

All 4 Ism Properties Match (Type, Gender, Status and Number) =
Mawsoof Siffa

بَشَرًا رَّسُولًا (A Human Messenger) •

بَشَرًا – “Human” Mawsoof (Common, Masculine, Nasab, Single)

رَّسُولًا – “Messnger” Siffa (Common, Masculine, Nasab, Single)

All 4 Ism Properties Match (Type, Gender, Status and Number) =
Mawsoof Siffa

قَدَرًا مَّقْدُورًا (A Decree Destined)

قَدَرًا – “Decree” Mawsoof (Common, Masculine, Nasab, Single)

مَّقْدُورًا – “Destined” Siffa (Common, Masculine, Nasab, Single)

All 4 Ism Properties Match (Type, Gender, Status and Number) =
Mawsoof Siffa

الْقَوْمَ الظَّالِمِينَ (The Wrongdoing People – “The” because of ال)

الْقَوْمَ – “The People” Mawsoof (Proper, Masculine, Plural, Nasab)

الظَّالِمِينَ – “The Wrongdoers” Siffa (Proper, Masculine, Plural, Nasab)

Assumed Nasab – no reason for being Jar (both Nasab and Jar look the same)

All 4 Ism Properties Match (Type, Gender, Status and Number) = Mawsoof Siffa

إِسْمُ الإِشَارَةِ وَالْمُشَارِ إِلَيْهِ - Pointers

Made of 2 Parts:

1. Pointing Word - إِسْمُ الإِشَارَةِ
2. What is Pointed to - الْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ

Example:

That Boy

“That” is the Pointer

“Boy” is what is Pointed to

3 Rules of Pointer Fragment

1. Pointing Word and What is Pointed at – Match in 4 Ism Properties
(Number, Gender, Status, Type)

2. What is Pointed at - الْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ - Must have ال on it

3. Pointing Word and What is Pointed at Must be Next to each other

Pointer Table اِسْمُ الْاِشَارَةِ for Things which are Close/Near

	Plural	Dual	Singular
Masculine	هَؤُلَاءِ	هَذَانِ	هَذَا
Meaning	These	These Two	This
Feminine	هَؤُلَاءِ	هَتَانِ	هَذِهِ
Meaning	These	These Two	This

Pointer Table اِسْمُ الْاِشَارَةِ for Things which are Far

	Plural	Dual	Singular
Masculine	أُولَئِكَ	ذَٰلِكَ	ذَٰلِكَ
Meaning	Those	Those Two	That
Feminine	أُولَئِكَ	تَٰلِكَ	تَٰلِكَ

Feminine	Those	Those Two	That
----------	-------	-----------	------

Singular and Plural Forms are Non-Flexible

Dual Forms are Partly Flexible and Show Nasab/Jar Status

Dual Chart for Pointers

Nasab/Jar - Dual	Rafa - Dual	Meaning
هَذَيْنِ	هَذَانِ - Masculine	These Two
هَتَيْنِ	هَتَانِ - Feminine	These Two
ذَيْنِكَ	ذَيْنِكَ - Masculine	Those Two
تَيْنِكَ	تَيْنِكَ - Feminine	Those Two

Examples

هَذَا الْقُرْآنُ – This Quran

هَذَا - Pointing Word – Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Masculine, Proper

الْقُرْآنُ - What is Pointed to - has ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Masculine, Proper

What is Pointed to has ال on it and All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = Pointer Fragment (This Quran)

هَذِهِ جَهَنَّمُ - This is Hell

هَذِهِ - Pointing Word – Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Feminine, Proper

جَهَنَّمُ - What is Pointed to – does not have ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Feminine, Proper (Name of a Place)

What is Pointed to does not have ال on it even though All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = NOT a Pointer Fragment – it is a Pointer Sentence so translation will be “This is Hell” not “This Hell”

NOTE:

In Pointer Fragment – no “is” in between Pointer and What it Points to
Example: This Quran

In Pointer Sentence – “is” in between Pointer and What it Points to
Example: This is Hell

ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ – That Book

ذَلِكَ - Pointing Word – Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Masculine, Proper

الْكِتَابُ - What is Pointed to has ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Masculine, Proper

What is Pointed to has ال on it and All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = Pointer Fragment (That Book)

Referee (Independent) Pronoun

Used to create a Sentence (not a Fragment) using the word “the” or ال

But putting ال on What is Pointed to creates fragment so a referee (Independent) pronoun is placed between the Pointing word and What is Pointed to which has ال on it – so a sentence is made instead of a fragment

Example

ذَلِكَ كِتَابٌ – That is a Book

This means “that is a Book” but if the sentence needs a “the” so it becomes “That is the Book” –

If ال is added to book to make it “the Book” it produces a fragment:

ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ – That Book

To create “That is the Book” – referee (independent) pronoun used

ذَلِكَ هُوَ الْكِتَابُ – That is the book

Referee pronoun – needs to match Pointing word in: Number and Gender

Pointing word ذَلِكَ is Singular and Masculine

Referee Pronoun هُوَ – is Singular and Masculine

Complex Pointer Fragment

Includes other Fragments e.g. Harf of Jar or Harf of Nasab

The Rules for Pointer Fragments must still apply in order to be a Pointer Fragment

Examples

إِنَّ هَذَا الرَّسُولَ – Certainly, this Messenger

إِنَّ – Harf of Nasab

هذا – The Ism of the Harf of Nasab and a Pointing Word – Nasab (because the Harf of Nasab makes it Nasab), Singular, Masculine, Proper

الرَّسُولَ - What is Pointed to has ال on it

Nasab (its Status is copied from the Pointing Word because of the **ال** on it even if the Harakat was missing), Singular, Masculine, Proper

What is Pointed to has **ال** on it and All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = Complex Pointer Fragment (Certainly, this Messenger)

إِسْمُ هَذَا الرَّجُلِ – Name of this Man

إِسْمُ – Mudhaf – Light and No **ال** on it

هَذَا – Mudhaf Alai and a Pointing Word – Jar (because it is a Mudhaf Alai), Singular, Masculine, Proper

الرَّجُلِ - What is Pointed to has **ال** on it

Jar (its Status is copied from the Pointing Word because of the **ال** on it even if the Harakat was missing), Singular, Masculine, Proper

What is Pointed to has **ال** on it and All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = Complex Pointer Fragment (Name of this Man)

Pointing to Eedhafa

Mudhaf cannot have ال on it

But What is Pointed at Must have ال on it to make a Pointer Fragment

These opposing rules are corrected by placing the pointer after the Eedhafa

Examples

سَفَرُنَا هَذَا – This Journey of Ours

سَفَرُ - Mudhaf - Light and No ال on it - Rafa, Singular, Masculine, Proper (because Mudhaf Alai is Proper)

نَا – Mudhaf Alia - Attached Pronoun “we” - Jar, Plural, Masculine, Proper (because it is a Pronoun)

NOTE: Eedhafa Fragment (Mudhaf and Mudhaf Alai) is What is Pointed to

هَذَا – Pointing Word - Rafa (No reason to make it anything else), Singular, Masculine, Proper

All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and Mudhaf = Complex Pointer Fragment (This Journey of Ours)

NOTE:

هَذَا سَفَرُنَا

Putting Pointing Word ahead of Eedhafa would create a Pointing Sentence not a Pointer Fragment

Pointer Fragment Needs ال on What is Pointed to

But Mudhaf cannot have ال on it

So this Pointing Sentence would not mean “This Journey of Ours” it would instead mean “This is Our Journey” – which changes the meaning.

Pointing Sentence uses “is”

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Connector Letters - حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Connectors/Harf of Ataf حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ come between Isms, Fragments and Sentences

When connecting Isms – the Status of the First Ism is carried over to the next Ism

What comes after Harf of Ataf isمَعْطُوفٌ عَلَى – the Ism is then mentioned after this term

Some Harfs of Ataf

Harf of Ataf	Meaning
وَ	And
ثُمَّ	Then (after some time)
أَمْ	Either
فَ	Then (after a short duration)
بَلْ	Rather

لَكِنْ

However

Examples

مُسْلِمٌ وَمُؤْمِنٌ – A Muslim and a Believer

وَ – Harf of Ataf

مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَى مُسْلِمٍ - مُؤْمِنٌ

NOTE: عَلَى is Harf of Jar (makes next word in Jar Status)

NOTE: the وَ carried the Rafa Status from مُسْلِمٌ to مُؤْمِنٌ

مُسْتَقَرٌّ وَمَتَاعٌ – A Place to Live and A Provision

وَ – Harf of Ataf

مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَى مُسْتَقَرٍّ is مَتَاعٌ

NOTE: عَلَى is Harf of Jar (makes next word in Jar Status)

NOTE: the وَ carried the Rafa Status from مُسْتَقَرٌّ to مَتَاعٌ

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

الجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ - Noun Sentences

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Two Types of Arabic Sentences

1. Noun Sentences - الجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ – Sentence Begins with

Isim (Noun) (normally)

2. Verb Sentences - الجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ - Sentence Begins with Fi'l

(Verb)

الجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ - Noun Sentences

Every Noun Sentence has an “is” or equivalent in it

The “is” can be located where there is the first break in the words which are connected in a chain

The words which are connected in a chain include

1. Harf of Jar and Majroor Fragment - الجَارُ وَالْمَجْرُورُ

2. Harf of Nasab and its Ism - حَرْفُ نَصَبٍ وَاسْمُهَا

3. Eedhafa - الإِضَافَةُ

4. Mawsoof Siffa - الْمَوْصُوفُ وَالصِّفَةُ

5. Pointer Fragment - اسْمُ الإِشَارَةِ وَالْمُشَارُ إِلَيْهِ

6. Harf of Ataf - حَرْفُ عَطْفٍ

Examples

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Certainly, Allah (SWT) “is” not Ashamed

إِنَّ اللَّهَ – “Certainly Allah (SWT)” These two Isms are connected – Harf of Nasab and its Ism

اللَّهُ لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – No connection between the word Allah (SWT) and the rest of the sentence = break in chain – so “is” goes after the word Allah (SWT) = Certainly, Allah (SWT) “is” not Ashamed

أَنَّ الْحَقُّ مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ – That it “is” the truth from their Lord

أَنَّهُ – “That it” Harf of Nasab and its Ism (Attached Pronoun اِ))

أَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ – No connection between the Harf of Nasab Fragment and the next Ism الْحَقُّ – break in chain – so “is” goes after the words “That it” = That it “is” the truth

الْحَقُّ مِنْ – “The truth from” No connection between Ism and Harf of Jar – but “is” already used so not used again – sentence continues without a second “is” = “The truth from”

مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ – Complex Fragment – “From their Lord”

Harf of Jar مِنْ with Majroor رَبِّ – which is Mudhaf (light and no ال)

Mudhaf Alai is هِمْ (Attached pronoun)

أَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ – That it “is” the truth from their Lord

لَكُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ مُسْتَقَرٌّ – For you all “is” in the Earth a place of settlement

لَكُمْ – “For You All” - Harf of Jar and Majroor

لَكُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ مُسْتَقَرٌّ – No connection between first Harf of Jar and Majroor fragment لَكُمْ and second Harf of Jar and Majroor

fragment **فِي الْأَرْضِ** – so break in chain – “is” goes after the first Harf of Jar fragment = For you all “is” in the Earth a place of settlement

Common Places to find “is”

1. After Independent Pronouns
2. After Pointing Words - **إِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ**
3. After Harf of Nasb and its Ism - **حَرْفُ النَّصْبِ وَإِسْمُهَا**
4. Between a Proper and Common Word

Finding “is” After Independent Pronouns

If Independent Pronoun followed by Ism – they both match in Gender and Number

Examples

نَحْنُ مُصْلِحُونَ - We “are” reformers

NOTE: “are” is an equivalent of “is”

نَحْنُ – Independent Pronoun – Plural, Masculine

مُصْلِحُونَ – Ism – Plural, Masculine

هُمُ الْمُفْسِدُونَ – They “are” the corrupters

هُمُ – Independent Pronoun – Plural, Masculine

الْمُفْسِدُونَ – Ism – Plural, Masculine

Finding “is” After Pointers

If the word after the Pointing Word does NOT have ال on it – it cannot be a Pointing Fragment and is instead a Sentence and “is” is placed after the Pointing Word

If Pointing Word followed by Ism (with no ال on it) then they match in Gender and Number

Examples

هَذِهِ جَهَنَّمُ - This “is” Hell

هَذِهِ – Pointing Word – Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Feminine, Proper

جَهَنَّمُ – What is Pointed to has NO ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Feminine, Proper (Name of a Place)

What is Pointed to has NO ال on it even though All 4 Isms Properties match between Pointer and What it points to = NOT a Pointer Fragment – it is a Sentence so translation will be “This is Hell”

ذَلِكَ كِتَابٌ – That “is” a Book

ذَلِكَ - Pointing Word - Rafa (Assumed – no reason to be anything else), Singular, Masculine, Proper

كِتَابٌ - What is Pointed to has NO ال on it

Rafa, Singular, Masculine, Common

What is Pointed to has NO ال on it and All 4 Ism Properties do not match = NOT a Pointer Fragment – it is a Sentence so translation will be “That is a Book”

Finding “is” After Harf of Nasb and its Ism

“Is” comes after Harf of Nasab and its Ism

Example

إِنَّ اللَّهَ شَدِيدُ الْعِقَابِ - Certainly, Allah (SWT) is intense in punishment

إِنَّ اللَّهَ – Harf of Nasab and its Ism

إِنَّ اللَّهَ شَدِيدُ الْعِقَابِ – No connection between Harf of Nasab and its Ism and the next Ism – Break in chain – “is” goes after Harf of Nasab and its Ism: “Certainly Allah (SWT) “is” intense in punishment”

Finding “is” between a Proper and Common Word

Proper word followed by Common word – “is” goes between them

Two words usually match in Gender and Number

Example

اللَّهُ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ - Allah (SWT) is All Hearing, All Knowing

(لَفْظُ الْجَلَالَةِ) اللَّهُ – Rafa, Single, Masculine, Proper

سَمِيعٌ – Rafa, Single, Masculine, Common

عَلِيمٌ – Rafa, Single, Masculine, Common

اللَّهُ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ – No connection between the word Allah (SWT) لَفْظُ الْجَلَالَةِ and the next two Isms – break in chain – “is” goes in

between Proper and Common words: “Allah (SWT) “is” All Hearing, All Knowing”

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Grammatical Labelling - إِعْرَابُ الْجُمْلَةِ الْإِسْمِيَّةِ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Two levels of labelling إِعْرَابُ

1. Sentence Level Labels – contain separate words and/or fragments within them – higher level
2. Fragment Level Labels – further breakdown of sentence level label – lower level

Sentence Level Labels

الجُمْلَةُ الْإِسْمِيَّةُ - Noun Sentence

Made of 3 Parts:

1. The Initiator (Mubtada) – الْمُبْتَدَأُ

Default Status is Rafa

It is Ism that comes before “is” in the English translation

Must be present within a Noun Sentence

2. The News (Khabr) – الْخَبَرُ

Default Status is Rafa

It is the Ism(s) that comes after “is” in the English translation

3. Related to the News – (Mootalik Bil Khabr) - الْمُتَعَلِّقُ بِالْخَبَرِ

It is the Ism(s) that comes after “is” in the English translation

Can be made of: Harf of Jar Fragment or Special Mudhaf Fragment of Time and Place (Zharf)

NOTE: every Noun Sentence can have:

1. Muftada and Khabr only
2. Muftada and Mootalik Bil Khabr only
3. Muftada, Khabr and Mootalik Bil Khabr (Normal Noun Sentence Structure/Order)

Examples

هُمُ الْخُسِرُونَ - They are the Losers

هُمُ – Muftada – Independent Pronoun

الْخُسِرُونَ – Khabr

No connection between the two Isms – break in chain – “are” goes in between Muftada and Khabr: They “are” the Losers

أَنْتَ الْعَلِيمُ الْحَكِيمُ - You are All Knowing, All Wise

أَنْتَ – Muftada - Independent Pronoun -

الْعَلِيمُ – 1st Khabr

الْحَكِيمُ – 2nd Khabr

No connection between the three Isms – break in chain – “are” goes in first break in chain between Muftada and 1st Khabr: You are All Knowing, All Wise

إِنَّ صَلَوَتَكَ سَكَنٌ لَهُمْ – Certainly, your supplication is tranquility for them

إِنَّ صَلَوَتَكَ - Muftada (Harf of Nasab and its Ism)

Fragment Level:

إِنَّ صَلَوَتَ (Harf of Nasab and its Ism)

صَلَوَتَكَ – Eedhafa Fragment (Mudhaf and Mudhaf Alai)

سَكَنٌ – Khabr

لَهُمْ - Mootalik Bil Khabr (Harf of Jar Fragment)

“is” goes between Muftada and Khabr – first break in chain: Certainly, your supplication “is” tranquility for them

Abnormal Noun Sentence Structure

Normal Noun Sentence Structure/Order = Muftada, Khabr and Mootalik Bil Khabr

Moving each component around changes the meaning of sentence

Something is brought forward from normal place = Mookadam – مُقَدَّمٌ

Something is brought backwards from normal place = Mooakhar – مُؤَخَّرٌ

NOTE: As Harf of Nasab and its Ism can be separated – if any part of it is Mooakhar - the entire Harf of Nasab fragment is considered Mooakhar

2 Abnormal Patterns

1. Mootalik Bil Khabr followed by Proper Muftada – (If Muftada is Common – then this a Normal Noun Sentence Structure)
2. Muftada, Mootalik Bil Khabr and then Khabr - Creates different meanings – determined by context/meaning

Order of: Mootalik Bil Khabr and then Muftada

Creates meaning of exclusivity – اِخْتِصَاصٌ

Example

لِلّٰهِ الْمَثَلُ الْأَعْلٰى – For Allah (SWT) “alone” is the highest attribute

لِلّٰهِ – Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam - (Harf of Jar Fragment)

الْمَثَلُ الْأَعْلٰى – Muftada Mooakhar (it is Proper) – (Mawsoof Siffa Fragment)

الْأَعْلٰى is Non-Flexible – it is in Rafa status (no reason to make it Nasab or Jar)

لَهُ مَلِكُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ – For Him “alone” is the ownership of the Heavens and the Earth

لَهُ – Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam - (Harf of Jar Fragment)

مَلِكُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ - Muftada Mooakhar (it is Proper) (Mudhaf

with Two Mudhaf Alais – with و Ataf connecting the two)

NOTE: It is not a Special Mudhaf of Time and Place (Zharf) otherwise it would be a Mootalik Bil Khabr

فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ مَّرَضٌ – In their hearts is a disease

فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ - Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam - (Harf of Jar Fragment)

مَّرَضٌ - Muftada Mooakhar – But it is Common not Proper - so this is normal sentence structure – therefore no exclusivity added in the meaning: “In their hearts is a disease” it is not “In their hearts only is a disease”

2 More Abnormal Noun Sentence Structures/Order

1. Possession sentences e.g. He has
2. Confirming Existence of Something/Someone e.g. there is

Mootalik Bil Khabr and then Muftada is used for both

2 Types of Possession sentences

1st Type

Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam (Harf of Jar ل is used) with the possessor of the item

Muftada Mooakhar – is the thing which is possessed

Example

لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ مُّهِينٌ - For them is a humiliating punishment

لَهُمْ - Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam (Harf of Jar ل is used) with the possessor of the item – “them”

عَذَابٌ مُّهِينٌ - Muftada Mooakhar – is the thing which is possessed
– Mawsoof Siffa structure

2 Types of Possession sentences

2nd Type

Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam (Special Mudhaf عِنْدَ is used) with the possessor of the item

Muftada Mooakhar – is the thing which is possessed

Example

عِنْدَهُ عِلْمُ السَّاعَةِ – With Him alone is the knowledge of the Hour

عِنْدَهُ - Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam (Special Mudhaf عِنْدَ is used) with the possessor of the item – “Him”

عِلْمُ السَّاعَةِ - Muftada Mooakhar – is the thing which is possessed
– Eedhafa Fragment

NOTE: As the Muftada is Proper (when Mudhaf Alai is Proper – Mudhaf is Proper also) – exclusivity is added as the Muftada is Mooakhar: With Him “alone” is the knowledge of the Hour

Confirming Existence of Something/Someone e.g. there is

2 Types of Confirming Existence Sentences

1st Type

Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam then Muftada Mooakhar

Example

فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ مَّرَضٌ – In their hearts is a disease

فِي قُلُوبِهِمْ - Mootalik Bil Khabr Mookadam - (Harf of Jar Fragment)

مَّرَضٌ - Muftada Mooakhar – But it is Common not Proper so this is normal sentence structure – therefore no exclusivity added to its meaning: “In their hearts is a disease” it is not “In their hearts only is a disease”

Complex Sentences

The Khabr can contain a whole sentence which has its own grammatical makeup (lower level makeup)

Full sentence contained by Khabr can be:

1. Noun Sentences - الْجُمْلَةُ الاسْمِيَّةُ – Sentence Begins with

Ism (Noun) (normally)

2. Verb Sentences - الْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ - Sentence Begins with Fi'l

(Verb) – will be discussed later

Example

إِنَّهُمْ هُمُ الْمُفْسِدُونَ – Certainly they, they are the corrupters

إِنَّهُمْ – Muftada (Harf of Nasab and its Ism)

هُمُ الْمُفْسِدُونَ – Khabr

Khabr is a Noun Sentence in itself:

هُمُ — Muftada (Independent Pronoun)

الْمُفْسِدُونَ – Khabr

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

فِعْلٌ - Fi'l (Verb)

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Every Fi'l has a Pronoun inside it = can be the Doer

Full sentence = Doer and Action

Fi'l contains both the Doer and the Action so it is a complete Verb sentence

الْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ - (sentence which begins with a Fi'l)

3 Main Types of Fi'l

1. Past Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي

2. Present/Future Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ

3. Imperative – Command - فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ Prohibition - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ

3 Parts of Verb Sentence

1. The Action – **الفِعْلُ**
2. The Doer - **الْفَاعِلُ**
3. The Detail – **المَفْعُولُ**

Normal Order of Verb sentence : Action – Doer – Detail

Rearranging order can cause change in meaning

The Doer – **الْفَاعِلُ**

2 Types of Doers:

1. Inside Doer - **الضَّمِيرُ الْمُسْتَتَرُّ** – built in/hidden pronoun – every

Fi'l has it

2. Outside Doer – the Doer other than a pronoun e.g. Yusuf instead of
he

Outside Doer Rules

Comes after Fi'l

Outside Doer in Rafa status

Fi'l – must be only هُوَ or هِيَ versions

Outside Doer and Fi'l must match in Gender

Examples

هُوَ - versions

فَعَلَ مُؤْمِنٌ = A Believer Done (something)

فَعَلَ مُؤْمِنَانِ = Two Believers Done (something)

فَعَلَ مُؤْمِنُونَ = Believers Done (something)

In each case the Outside Doer is Rafa – comes after the Fi'l – and matches in Gender to the Fi'l – both are Masculine

هِيَ - versions

فَعَلَتْ مُؤْمِنَةٌ = A Female Believer Done (something)

فَعَلَتْ مُؤْمِنَتَانِ = Two Female Believers Done (something)

فَعَلَتْ مُؤْمِنَاتٌ = Female Believers Done (something)

In each case the Outside Doer is Rafa – comes after the Fi'l – and matches in Gender to the Fi'l – both are Feminine

The Detail – الْمَفْعُولُ

The Detail of the Action

Takes a Nasab Status

Types of Details

1. Mafool Beehee - الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ – Who or What Details
2. Mafool Feehee - الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ – When or Where Details
3. Mafool LaHoo - الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ – Why Details
4. Mafool Haal - الْمَفْعُولُ الْحَالُ – How Details
5. Mafool Mutlak - الْمَفْعُولُ الْمُطْلَقُ – Emphasis Action/ Describes

Action/ Indicates Number of Times of Action

6. Mootalik Bil Fi'l - الْمُتَعَلِّقُ بِالْفِعْلِ – Harf of Jar Fragment found

within Verb Sentence

Mafool Beehee - الْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ

Who or What Details

Appears as Ism or Pronoun attached to Fi'l

Example

جَعَلْنَكُمْ أُمَّةً وَسَطًا – We made you all a balanced nation

جَعَلْنَا – Fi'l – Inside doer – نَحْنُ – We made

كُم – Mafool Beehee – Attached pronoun – Nasab Status – Who did He make? – You all

أُمَّةً وَسَطًا – 2nd Mafool Behee – Mawsoof Siffa - Nasab Status – What did He make you into? A balanced nation

Quotes = Type of Mafool Beehee

Quote - مَقُولُ الْقَوْلِ

The whole Quote is in Rafa status

Can contain Noun Sentence or a Verb Sentence

Example

قَالُوا إِنَّا مَعَكُمْ – They said “Certainly, we are with you”

قَالُوا – Fi'l – Inside Doer هُمْ – “They said”

إِنَّا مَعَكُمْ – Quote – the whole Quote is in Rafa Status

Quote is a Noun Sentence

إِنَّا – Muftada (Harf of Nasab and its Ism)

مَعَكُمْ – Mootalik Bil Khabr (Special Mudhaf - Zharf)

Mafool Feehee - الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ

When or Where Details

Often appears as a Special Mudhaf of Time or Place (Zharf)

Appears also as an Ism

The Harf of Jar **فِي** – in Verb Sentence – is a Mafool Feehee

Example

سَأَلَ فِي اللَّيْلِ – He asked in the night

سَأَلَ – Fi'l – Inside doer **هُوَ**

فِي – in the night - Harf of Jar **فِي** – in Verb Sentence – is a Mafool Feehee – Nasab Status – When did he ask? In the night

المَفْعُولُ لَهُ - Mafool LaHoo

Why Details

Often appears as a Masdar – this will be discussed later on

Example

يَشْرِي نَفْسَهُ ابْتِغَاءَ مَرْضَاتِ اللَّهِ – He sells himself seeking the pleasure of Allah (SWT)

يَشْرِي – Fi'l – Inside doer **هُوَ**

نَفْسَهُ – Mafool Beehee – Nasab status - What did he sell? Himself

ابْتِغَاءَ مَرْضَاتِ اللَّهِ - Mafool Lahoo – a double Eedhafa Fragment -
Nasab status – Why did he sell himself? To seek the pleasure of Allah (SWT)

المَفْعُولُ الْحَالُ - Mafool Haal

How Details

Describes state of Doer or the Action

Example

خَرَجُوا مِنْ دِيَارِهِمْ بَطْرًا – They came out from their homes arrogantly

هُمْ خَرَجُوا - Fi'l – Inside doer

مِنْ دِيَارِهِمْ – Mafool Feehee - Mootalik Bil Fi'l (Harf of Jar Fragment) –
Nasab Status – Where did they came out from? Their homes

بَطْرًا – Mafool Haal – Nasab Status – How did they come out? Arrogantly

المَفْعُولُ الْمُطْلَقُ - Mafool Mutlak

Emphasizes Action – when Mafool Mutlak is a single word

Describes Action – when Mafool Mutlak is a Siffa (description word)

Indicates Number of Times of Action – when Mafool Mutlak has a number

Mafool Mutlak often appears as a Masdar with the same Root Letters with the Fi'l

Example

تُحِبُّونَ الْمَالَ حُبًّا جَمًّا – You All Love Wealth with great love

أَنْتُمْ - Fi'l – Inside doer تُحِبُّونَ

الْمَالِ – Mafool Beehee – Nasab Status – What do they love? Wealth

حُبًّا جَمًّا - Mafool Mutlak – Mawsoof Siffa - Nasab Status - Shows intensity of love – Great Love

Abnormal Verb Sentence Structure

Normal Order: Action – Doer – Detail

Rearranging order can cause change in meaning

Only Mafool Beehee and Mootalik Bil Fi'l can be moved around (before the Doer or before the Fi'l)

Mafool Feehee can be moved around – still considered normal

Complex Sentences

In Noun Sentences – the Khabr can contain a Noun Sentence or a Verb Sentence

When Khabr is a Verb Sentence – Pronoun inside Fi'l matches with the Muftada in Number and Gender

Example

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Certainly, Allah (SWT) is not shy

إِنَّ اللَّهَ – Muftada (Harf of Nasab and its Ism) – Masculine and Single

لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Khabr – Rafa status

Within Khabr is a Verb Sentence: He is not Shy

Pronoun inside Fi'l – هُوَ – Masculine and Single (matches with Muftada)

Converting between Verb and Noun Sentences

By matching Gender and Number of Pronoun in Fi'l with Muftada – a Verb sentence can be converted into a Noun Sentence and vice versa

Example

Noun Sentence version

اللَّهُ لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Allah (SWT) is not shy

اللَّهُ – Muftada – Masculine and Single

لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Khabr – in Rafa status

Pronoun inside Fi'l – هُوَ – Masculine and Single (matches with Muftada)

Verb Sentence version

لَا يَسْتَحْيَ اللَّهُ - Allah (SWT) is not shy

لَا يَسْتَحْيَ – Fi'l - هُوَ form – Masculine and Single

اللَّهُ – Outside Doer – Rafa Status - Masculine and Single

Outside Doer rules are followed:

1. Outside Doer comes after Fi'l
2. Fi'l must only be in هُوَ or هِيَ versions

3. Outside doer is in Rafa status
4. Outside doer matches in Gender with the Fi'l

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Verb Sentence: Past Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Past Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي

Every Fi'l has a pronoun inside it

The Fi'l changes form depending on the pronoun inside it

Example Fi'l table for فَعَلَ – He Did (Something)

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ فَعَلُوا They Did	هُمَا فَعَلَا Both of them Did (Men)	هُوَ فَعَلَ He/It Did	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ فَعَلْنَ They (Women) Did	هُمَا فَعَلَتَا Both of them (Women) Did	هِيَ فَعَلَتْ She/It Did	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ فَعَلْتُمْ All of You Did	أَنْتُمَا فَعَلْتُمَا You Two Did (Men)	أَنْتَ فَعَلْتَ You Did (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ فَعَلْتُنَّ All of You (Women) Did	أَنْتُمَا فَعَلْتُمَا You Two (Women) Did	أَنْتِ فَعَلْتِ You (Woman) Did	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ فَعَلْنَا We Did		أَنَا فَعَلْتُ I Did	Both

NOTE: Including and After هُنَّ version – the last Root letter of Fi'l will always have a Sukoon on it – فَعَلَ

Another example table of Past Tense Fi'l for نَصَرَ – He Helped

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُم نَصَرُوا They helped	هُمَا نَصَرَا Both of them helped (Men)	هُوَ نَصَرَ He/It helped	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ نَصَرْنَ They (Women) helped	هُمَا نَصَرَتَا Both of them (Women) helped	هِيَ نَصَرَتْ She/It helped	Feminine

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ نَصَرْتُمْ All of You helped	أَنْتُمَا نَصَرْتُمَا You Two helped (Men)	أَنْتَ نَصَرْتَ You helped (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِنَّ نَصَرْتِنَّ All of You (Women) helped	أَنْتُمَا نَصَرْتُمَا You Two (Women) helped	أَنْتِ نَصَرْتِ You (Woman) helped	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَصَرْنَا We helped	أَنَا نَصَرْتُ I helped		Both

NOTE: Including and After هُنَّ version – the last Root letter of Fi'l will always have a Sukoon on it – نَصَرُ

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Verb Sentence: Present/Future Tense - الْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Same rules apply to Present/Future tense like Past tense

Every Fi'l has a pronoun inside it

The Fi'l changes form depending on the pronoun inside it

Example Fi'l table for يَفْعَلُ – He is doing (Something)

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَفْعَلُونَ They are doing	هُمَا يَفْعَلَانِ Both of them are doing (Men)	هُوَ يَفْعَلُ He/It is doing	Masculine

Start & End Letter	ي + وُنَ	ي + اِنِ	ي + ُ	
Third Person	هُنَّ تَفْعَلْنَ They (Women) are doing	هُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Both of them (Women) are doing	هِيَ تَفْعَلُ She/It is doing	Feminine
Start & End Letter	ي + نَ	ت + اِنِ	ت + ُ	
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعَلُونَ All of You are doing	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ You Two are doing (Men)	أَنْتَ تَفْعَلُ You are doing (Man)	Masculine

Start & End Letter	ت + وَنَ	ت + اِنِ	ت + ُ	
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَفْعَلْنَ All of You (Women) are doing	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ You Two (Women) are doing	أَنْتِ تَفْعَلِينَ You (Woman) are doing	Feminine
Start & End Letter	ت + نَ	ت + اِنِ	ت + يِنَ	

First Person	نَحْنُ نَفْعَلُ We are doing	أَنَا أَفْعَلُ I am doing	Both
Start & End Letter	ن + ُ	أ + ُ	

NOTE:

Present/Future tense Fi'ls – always begin with 4 four letters: أ ي ت ن

These letters take either Fataha or Dhamma – whichever it takes it remains on it throughout the chart

The هِيَ (she/it) and أَنْتَ (You masculine) versions look the same – context/meaning of the text is used to determine which one it is

Use the Start and End Letters rows to identify how the Fi'l changes in each stage

Another example table of Present/Future Tense Fi'l for يَذْبَحُ – He sacrifices

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُم يَذْبَحُونَ They are sacrificing	هُمَا يَذْبَحَانِ Both of them are sacrificing	هُوَ يَذْبَحُ He/It sacrifices	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ يَذْبَحْنَ They (Women) are sacrificing	هُمَا تَذْبَحَانِ Both of them (Women) are sacrificing	هِيَ تَذْبَحُ She/It sacrifices	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَذْبَحُونَ All of You are sacrificing	أَنْتُمَا تَذْبَحَانِ You Two are sacrificing (Men)	أَنْتَ تَذْبَحُ You are sacrificing (Man)	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتِ تَذْبَحِينَ All of You (Women) are sacrificing	أَنْتُمَا تَذْبَحَانِ You Two (Women) are sacrificing	أَنْتِ تَذْبَحِينَ You (Woman) are sacrificing	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَذْبَحُ We are sacrificing		أَنَا أَذْبَحُ I am sacrificing	Both

Forms of Present/Future Tense

Unlike Past tense – certain words before the Present/Future tense can change its form

3 Form changes of Present/Future Tense

1. Normal (مَرْفُوعٌ) – Default Status – Present/Future tense unchanged

by word before it

2. Light (مَنْصُوبٌ) – when it is affected by specific word before it

called الْحُرُوفُ النَّاصِبَةُ لِلْمُضَارِعِ

3. Lightest (مَجْزُومٌ) - when it is affected by specific word before it

called الْحُرُوفُ الْجَازِمَةُ لِلْمُضَارِعِ

Light Version مَنْصُوبٌ Chart

When it is affected by specific word that comes before it

The Light Words:

Word	Meaning
أَنَّ	To (connector – I want to go to school) that lest
لَنْ	Will not – Translates in to the Future Tense
لِ / كَيْ / لِكَيْ	So that In order

إِذَنْ / إِذَا	In that case
حَتَّى	Until

Rules for making Present/Future tense Light

1. The end letter on the Present Tense Fi'l takes a Fatah but
2. If the end letter is an ending combination with ن – it is removed and
nothing else is done (the ending combinations with ن = اِنْ – يَنْ –

(يَنْ - وَنَ

3. أَنْتُمْ and هُنَّ versions are unchanged

The Light Chart Example with يَفْعَلُ

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُمْ يَفْعَلُونَ Light = يَفْعَلُوا They are doing	هُمَا يَفْعَلَانِ Light = يَفْعَلَا Both of them are doing	هُوَ يَفْعَلُ Light = يَفْعَلِ He/It is doing	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يَفْعَلْنَ Light = يَفْعَلْنَ They (Women) are doing	هُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Light = تَفْعَلَا Both of them (Women) are doing	هِيَ تَفْعَلُ Light = تَفْعَلِ She/It is doing	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعَلُونَ Light =	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Light =	أَنْتَ تَفْعَلُ Light =	Masculine

	تَفْعَلُوا All of You are doing	تَفْعَلَا You Two are doing	تَفْعَلِ You are doing	
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَفْعَلْنَ Light = تَفْعَلْنَ All of You (Women) are doing	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Light = تَفْعَلَا You Two (Women) are doing	أَنْتِ تَفْعَلِينَ Light = تَفْعَلِي You (Woman) are doing	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَفْعَلُ Light = نَفْعَلُ We are doing		أَنَا أَفْعَلُ Light = أَفْعَلُ I am doing	Both

Examples

يُرِيدُ أَنْ يَضْرِبَهُ – He intends to hit him

يَضْرِبُ – Present Tense Fi'l - in Light form – Fatah at end

Normal Present Tense Fi'l form: يَضْرِبُ

لِتُنْذِرَ قَوْمًا – So that you warn a people

لِتُنْذِرَ – the لِ at the beginning is a form of لِكَيْ = so that

تُنْذِرُ – Present Tense Fi'l - in Light form – Fatah at end

Normal Present Tense Fi'l form: تُنْذِرُ

NOTE: the لِ in this example cannot be Harf of Jar ل as Harf of Jar never comes before a Fi'l, only an Ism

Lightest Version مَجْزُومٌ Chart

When it is affected by specific word that comes before it

The Lightest Words

Word	Meaning
إِنْ	If (also used in conditional statements – If this...then that)
لَمْ	Did not (gives Past Tense meaning, even though it connects with Present/Future tense Fi'l)
لَمَّا	Not yet (this word also means “when” but in this case it is not the version which makes Present/Future tense Lightest)
وَلْ	And should
فَلْ	Then should
لِ	Should

Rules for making Present/Future tense Lightest

1. The end letter on the Present Tense Fi'l takes a Sukoon but

2. If the end letter is an ending combination with ن – it is removed and

nothing else is done (the ending combinations with ن = انِ – يُنِ –

يُنِ – وُنِ)

3. أَنْتَ and هُنَّ versions are unchanged

The Lightest Chart Example with يَفْعَلُ

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَفْعَلُونَ Light = يَفْعَلُوا Lightest =	هُمَا يَفْعَلَانِ Light = يَفْعَلَا Lightest =	هُوَ يَفْعَلُ Light = يَفْعَلُ Lightest =	Masculine

	يَفْعَلُوا They are doing	يَفْعَلَا Both of them are doing	يَفْعَلُ He/It is doing	
Third Person	هُنَّ يَفْعَلْنَ Light = يَفْعَلْنَ Lightest = يَفْعَلْنَ They (Women) are doing	هُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Light = تَفْعَلَا Lightest = تَفْعَلَا Both of them (Women) are doing	هِيَ تَفْعَلُ Light = تَفْعَلِ Lightest = تَفْعَلِ She/It is doing	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعَلُونَ Light = تَفْعَلُوا	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Light = تَفْعَلَا	أَنْتَ تَفْعَلُ Light = تَفْعَلِ	Masculine

	Lightest = تَفْعَلُوا All of You are doing	Lightest = تَفْعَلَا You Two are doing	Lightest = تَفْعَلِ You are doing	
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَفْعَلْنَ Light = تَفْعَلْنَ Lightest = تَفْعَلْنَ All of You (Women) are doing	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Light = تَفْعَلَا Lightest = تَفْعَلَا You Two (Women) are doing	أَنْتِ تَفْعَلِينَ Light = تَفْعَلِي Lightest = تَفْعَلِي You (Woman) are doing	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَفْعَلُ Light = نَفْعَلِ Lightest =		أَنَا أَفْعَلُ Light = أَفْعَلِ Lightest =	Both

	نَفْعَلُ We are doing	أَفْعَلُ I am doing	
--	--------------------------	------------------------	--

NOTE: in some cases the Light and Lightest versions appear the same – context/meaning is used to differentiate between the two

Examples

لَمْ يَفْعَلْهُ – He did not do it

لَمْ makes يَفْعَلُ – which is Lightest version

Original version – يَفْعَلُ

Light version - يَفْعَلِ

NOTE: لَمْ gives Past Tense meaning even though it used with a Present/Future tense

لَيَفْعَلْهُ – He should do it

لِ makes يَفْعَلُ – which is Lightest version

Original version – يَفْعَلُ

Light version - يَفْعَلِ

NOTE: the لِ in this example cannot be Harf of Jar ل as Harf of Jar never comes before a Fi'l, only an Ism

The لِ in this example cannot be the Light word لِيْ as that would cause the last letter to have a Fatah not a Sukoon. When the Harakat are missing, context/meaning is used to determine which لِ it is.

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Verb Sentence: Imperative – Command - فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ Prohibition - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Commanding and Forbidding forms are constructed from the Present/Future tense Fi'l forms

Commanding and Forbidding forms only connected to Second Person Pronouns – cannot Command or Forbid yourself (First Person) or an absent person (Third Person)

Forbidding - فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ

Steps in Constructing Forbidding Forms

1. Choose Present/Future tense Second Person Form – Pronoun matches with the one being forbidden e.g. one person, two people or plural people being forbidden
2. Put Fi'l in Lightest Form

3. Add a لا in front of Fi'l

Forbidding Chart Example with يَفْعَلُ

Only Second Person is needed

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعَلُونَ Lightest = تَفْعَلُوا Forbidding Form = لا تَفْعَلُوا All of You don't do!	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Lightest = تَفْعَلَا Forbidding Form = لا تَفْعَلَا You Two don't do!	أَنْتَ تَفْعَلُ Lightest = تَفْعَلْ Forbidding Form = لا تَفْعَلْ You don't do!	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	Feminine
	تَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلِينَ	
	Lightest =	Lightest =	Lightest =	
	تَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلَا	تَفْعَلِيْ	
	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =	
	لَا تَفْعَلْنَ	لَا تَفْعَلَا	لَا تَفْعَلِيْ	
	All of You (Women) don't do!	You Two (Women) don't do!	You (Woman) don't do!	

NOTE: To recognize Forbidding form – Look for Present/Future tense in Lightest form and لا in front of it – and is determined through context/meaning.

Negation vs Forbidding

Negation can use لا also – but the Present/Future tense will not be in Lightest form – Normal form is maintained

Forbidding – Present/Future tense must be in Lightest form

Examples

Forbidding Form

لَا تَفْعَلْهُ – You (man) don't do it!

Present/Future tense is in Lightest form

Negation Form

لَا تَفْعَلْهُ – You are not doing it

Present/Future tense is in Normal form

NOTE: this could also mean “She is not doing it” – context/meaning will determine which one it is

Direct and Indirect Forbidding

Indirect Forbidding – to someone who is absent – means: “should not do”

Same steps as Direct Forbidding:

1. Present/Future tense in Lightest form
2. Add لَا in front of Lightest form Fi'l

Indirect Forbidding can have an Outside Doer (only when هُوَ and هِيَ versions used)

Indirect Forbidding Example with يَفْعَلُ

Third Person – absent person

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَفْعَلُونَ Lightest = يَفْعَلُوا Indirect Forbidding = لا يَفْعَلُوا They should not do	هُمَا يَفْعَلَانِ Lightest = يَفْعَلَا Indirect Forbidding = لا يَفْعَلَا Both of them should not do	هُوَ يَفْعَلُ Lightest = يَفْعَلْ Indirect Forbidding = لا يَفْعَلْ He should not do	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ	هُمَا	هِيَ	Feminine
	يَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلَانِ	تَفْعَلُ	
	Lightest =	Lightest =	Lightest =	
	يَفْعَلْنَ	تَفْعَلَا	تَفْعَلْ	
	Indirect Forbidding =	Indirect Forbidding =	Indirect Forbidding =	
	لا يَفْعَلْنَ	لا تَفْعَلَا	لا تَفْعَلْ	
	They (Women) should not do	Both of them (Women) should not do	She should not do	

NOTE: هِيَ version of Indirect Forbidding is same as أَنْتَ version of Direct Forbidding – the two are differentiated through context/meaning

Commanding - فَعْلُ الْأَمْرِ

Steps in Constructing Commanding Form

1. Choose Present/Future tense Second Person Form – Pronoun matches with the one being forbidden e.g. one person, two people or plural people being forbidden
2. Put Fi'l in Lightest Form
3. Remove the ت – the first letter of the Fi'l
4. If the first letter (after removing ت) has any Harakat except Sukoon – then the construction is complete
5. If the first letter (after removing ت) has Sukoon - then need to add Alif ا at the start
6. The Harakat on ا =
 - If the second to last letter on the Fi'l in هُوَ version has Dhamma on it then the Alif gets a Dhamma too
 - If the second to last letter on the Fi'l in هُوَ version has Fatah or Kasra then the Alif gets a Kasra

- Only exception is the أَفْعَلَ (Family 4 pattern) which gets a Fatah on the Alif always – This will be discussed in more detail later

Commanding Chart Example with يَفْعَلُ

Only Second Person is needed

NOTE: The Harakat on the second to last letter in هُوَ version (يَفْعَلُ) is Fatah – so extra Alif gets a Kasra - اِ

is Fatah – so extra Alif gets a Kasra - اِ

(If it was Kasra (يَفْعِلُ) – then the extra Alif would get a Kasra also - اِ)

(If it was Dhamma (يَفْعُلُ) – then the extra Alif would get a Dhamma - اُ)

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعَلُونَ Lightest = تَفْعَلُوا	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Lightest = تَفْعَلَا	أَنْتَ تَفْعَلُ Lightest = تَفْعَلْ	Masculine

	Commanding Form = اِفْعَلُوا All of You do!	Commanding Form = اِفْعَلَا You Two do!	Commanding Form = اِفْعَلْ You do!	
Second Person	أَنْتِ تَفْعَلْنَ Lightest = تَفْعَلْنَ Commanding Form = اِفْعَلْنَ All of You (Women) do!	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Lightest = تَفْعَلَا Commanding Form = اِفْعَلَا You Two (women) do!	أَنْتِ تَفْعَلِينَ Lightest = تَفْعَلِي Commanding Form = اِفْعَلِي You (Woman) do!	Feminine

Example

Using Dhamma on extra Alif

اَنْصُرْ - You (man) Help! -

Second to last letter in هُوَ version (يَنْصُرُ) is Dhamma – so extra Alif gets a Dhamma اُ

أَنْتَ

تَنْصُرُ

Lightest =

تَنْصُرُ

Commanding Form =

اَنْصُرْ

You (man) help!

نُونُ التَّوَكُّيدِ - Nun of Emphasis

ن attaches to end of Present/Future tense – to emphasis action

Translates in the future tense

Nun of Emphasis can come with لَامُ التَّوَكُّيدِ – ل at the beginning of the Fi'l also shows emphasis

2 Levels of ن emphasis

1. Light ن emphasis - نُؤْنُ التَّوَكُّيدِ الْخَفِيفَةِ – one ن is added –

occurs twice in the Quran

2. Heavy ن emphasis - نُؤْنُ التَّوَكُّيدِ الثَّقِيلَةِ – two ن are added –

occurs many times in the Quran

The Heavy ن emphasis Chart Example for يَفْعَلُ

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَفْعَلُونَ Heavy ن emphasis = يَفْعَلْنَ They are absolutely doing	هُمَا يَفْعَلَانِ Heavy ن emphasis = يَفْعَلَانِ Both of them are absolutely doing	هُوَ يَفْعَلُ Heavy ن emphasis = يَفْعَلَنَّ He/it is absolutely doing	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ يَفْعَلْنَ Heavy ن emphasis = يَفْعَلَنَّ They (Women) are absolutely doing	هُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Heavy ن emphasis = تَفْعَلَانِ Both of them (Women) are absolutely doing	هِيَ تَفْعَلُ Heavy ن emphasis = تَفْعَلَنَّ She/It is absolutely doing	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعَلُونَ Heavy ن emphasis = تَفْعَلَنَّ All of You are absolutely doing	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Heavy ن emphasis = تَفْعَلَانِ You Two are absolutely doing	أَنْتَ تَفْعَلُ Heavy ن emphasis = تَفْعَلَنَّ You (man) are absolutely doing	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَفْعَلْنَ Heavy ن emphasis = تَفْعَلْنَ All of You (Women) are absolutely doing	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Heavy ن emphasis = تَفْعَلَانِ You Two (women) are absolutely doing	أَنْتِ تَفْعَلِينَ Heavy ن emphasis = تَفْعَلِينَ You (Woman) are absolutely doing	Feminine	
First Person	نَحْنُ نَفْعَلُ Heavy ن emphasis = نَفْعَلَنَّ We are absolutely doing			أَنَا أَفْعَلُ Heavy ن emphasis = أَفْعَلَنَّ I am absolutely doing	Both

NOTE: when the original Fi'l form has فُ at the end – it is replaced with Dhamma - هم/أنتم versions (Yellow highlight)

When the original Fi'l has Dhamma at end – it is replaced with Fataha

NOTE: the Direct Forbidding can be emphasized with the Light or Heavy ن emphasis as well by simply adding the ن to the Direct Forbidding version as shown in the above table

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Passive Fi'l - الْفِعْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Active Fi'l – the Doer is known

Example:

Yusuf hit the man

Yusuf is the Doer

Passive Fi'l – Keeps the Doer hidden – in both Past and Present/Future Tenses – Do not contain a Mafool Beehee

Examples:

Past Passive: the man was hit

Present Passive: the man is being hit

Passive reasons include – emphasizes action, showing respect to the Doer who is left unmentioned, etc

2 Parts of Passive Fi'l

1. Passive Fi'l – the Action - **الفِعْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ**

2. Naeedul Far'il - The thing/person the action is done to - **نَائِبُ**

الْفَاعِلِ

Example:

The man was hit

Passive Fi'l – “was hit”

Naeedul Far'il – “The man”

No Mafool Beehee in Passive Fi'l

The Mafool Beehee in an Active Fi'l is converted into the Naeedul Far'il in the Passive Fi'l

Past Passive Fi'l

Making a Past Active Fi'l into Past Passive Fi'l:

The last Harakat is unchanged

The second to last Harakat becomes a Kasra

All the Harakat before the second to last letter (except Sukoon) is changed to Dhamma

Examples

اقْتَرَبَ – Past Active Form - He came close

اُقْتُرِبَ – Past Passive Form – He was brought close

Last Harakat unchanged

Second to last Harakat gets a Kasra

All the Harakat before the second to last letter (except Sukoon) is changed to Dhamma

فَعَلَ – Past Active Form – He did

فُعِلَ – Past Passive Form – It was done

Last Harakat unchanged

Second to last Harakat gets a Kasra

All the Harakat before the second to last letter (except Sukoon) is changed to Dhamma

Example Past Active and Passive Fi'l table for فَعَلَ – He Did (Something)

NOTE: in some cases the meaning may not make sense but the process for making a Past Passive Fi'l still applies in each case

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ فَعَلُوا They Did Passive = فُعِلُوا It was done to them	هُمَا فَعَلَا Both of them Did Passive = فُعِلَا It was done to both of them	هُوَ فَعَلَ He/It Did Passive = فُعِلَ It was done or It was done to him	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ فَعَلْنَ They (Women) Did Passive = فُعِلْنَ It was done to them (Women)	هُمَا فَعَلَتَا Both of them Did Passive = فُعِلَتَا It was done to Both of them	هِيَ فَعَلَتْ She/It Did Passive = فُعِلَتْ It was done or It was done to her	Feminine

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ فَعَلْتُمْ All of You Did Passive = فُعِلْتُمْ It was done to you all	أَنْتُمَا فَعَلْتُمْ You Two Did Passive = فُعِلْتُمْ It was done to you two	أَنْتَ فَعَلْتَ You Did (Man) Passive = فُعِلْتَ It was done to you (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ فَعَلْتُنَّ All of You (Women) Did Passive = فُعِلْتُنَّ It was done to you all (Women)	أَنْتُمَا فَعَلْتُمْ You Two Did Passive = فُعِلْتُمْ It was done to you two (Women)	أَنْتِ فَعَلْتِ You Did (Woman) Passive = فُعِلْتِ It was done to you (Woman)	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ	أَنَا	Both
	فَعَلْنَا	فَعَلْتُ	
	We Did	I Did	
	Passive =	Passive =	
	فُعِلْنَا	فُعِلْتُ	
	It was done to us	It was done to me	

Present Passive Fi'l

Making a Present Active Fi'l into Present Passive Fi'l:

First letter gets a Dhamma

The Harakat on last letter is unchanged

All Harakat in between first and last is changed to Fatah (except Sukoon – left unchanged)

Examples

يَقْتَرِبُ – Present Active Form - He is coming close

يُقْتَرَبُ – Present Passive Form – He is being brought close

First letter gets a Dhamma

The Harakat on last letter is unchanged

All Harakat in between first and last is changed to Fatah (except Sukoon – left unchanged)

يَفْعَلُ – Present Active Form – He/it is doing

يُفْعَلُ – Present Passive Form – It is being done

First letter gets a Dhamma

The Harakat on last letter is unchanged

All Harakat in between first and last is changed to Fatah (except Sukoon – left unchanged)

Example Present Active and Passive Fi'l table for يَفْعَلُ – He/it is doing

(Something)

NOTE: in some cases the meaning may not make sense but the process for making a Present Passive Fi'l still applies in each case

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَفْعَلُونَ They are doing Passive = يُفْعَلُونَ It is being done to them	هُمَا يَفْعَلَانِ Both of them are doing Passive = يُفْعَلَانِ It is being done to both of them	هُوَ يَفْعَلُ He/It is doing Passive = يُفْعَلُ It is being done to him/it is being done	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يَفْعَلْنَ They (Women) are doing Passive = يُفْعَلْنَ It is being done to them (Women)	هُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Both of them (Women) are doing Passive = تُفْعَلَانِ It is being done to both	هِيَ تَفْعَلُ She/It is doing Passive = تُفْعَلُ It is being done to her/it is being done	Feminine

		of them (Women)		
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعَلُونَ All of You are doing Passive = تُفْعَلُونَ It is being done to you all	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ You Two are doing Passive = تُفْعَلَانِ It is being done to both of you (Man)	أَنْتَ تَفْعَلُ You are doing Passive = تُفْعَلُ It is being done to you (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَفْعَلْنَ All of You (Women) are doing Passive =	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ You Two are doing (Women) Passive =	أَنْتِ تَفْعَلِينَ You (Woman) are doing Passive =	Feminine

	تُفْعَلْنَ It is being done to all of you (Women)	تُفْعَلَانِ It is being done to both of you (Women)	تُفْعَلِينَ It is being done to you (Woman)	
First Person	نَحْنُ نُفْعَلُ We are doing Passive = نُفْعَلُ It is being done to us	أَنَا أُفْعَلُ I am doing Passive = أُفْعَلُ It is being done to me	Both	

نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ - Naeedul Far'il

The thing/person the action is done to

Example:

The man was hit

Naeedul Far'il – "the man"

Normal Far'il (the Doer) and Naeedul Far'il – have same grammatical rules

2 types of Naeedul Far'il

1. Inside – If the thing/person the action done to is a Pronoun
2. Outside - If the thing/person the action done to is not a Pronoun

Outside Naeedul Far'il and Outside Normal Far'il (the Outside Doer) same rules apply

Must come after Fi'l

Fi'l must be in هُوَ or هِيَ forms - the Gender of the Naeedul Far'il must match the form

It is in Rafa status

Examples

خُلِقْنَا – We were created (Past Passive Fi'l)

نَا – Inside Naeedul Far'il – Attached pronoun

خُلِقَ مُؤْمِنٌ – A believer was created (Past Passive Fi'l)

مُؤْمِنٌ – Outside Naeedul Far'il

Comes after Fi'l

The Past Passive Fi'l is in هُوَ form

Gender of Outside Naeedul Far'il matches with هُوَ Past Passive Fi'l Form

– Both are Masculine

Outside Naeedul Far'il is in Rafa status

NOTE: when searching for Passive Fi'l

Check the tense first (Past or Present/Future)

Past Tense – sounds to look for

و و
— — —
/

Present Tense – sounds to look for

/ / و
— — —

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Transitivity

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Two types:

1. Fi'l Lazim (Intransitive) - **الفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ**
2. Fi'l Mootaadee (Transitive) - **الفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي**

Fi'l Lazim (Intransitive) - **الفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ**

Cannot take a Mafool Beehee – which needs to be present in order to convert Active Fi'l to Passive Fi'l (Mafool Beehee becomes the Naeedul Far'il)

Fi'l Lazim – therefore cannot have a Passive Form

Action affects the person themselves

Check if Fi'l is Lazim – add words “something” or “someone” and if Fi'l does not make sense or needs extra words added to it to make sense = Fi'l Lazim

Examples:

I voted “someone”

I voted “something”

Both do not make sense unless extra words added to it = “I voted” Fi'l Lazim

I hit “someone”

I hit “something”

Both make sense (only one is needed) – so “I hit” = Fi'l Mootaadee

Fi'l Mootaadee (Transitive) - **الفعلُ الْمُتَعَدِّي**

Can take a Mafool Beehee – which needs to be present in order to convert Active Fi'l to Passive Fi'l – (Mafool Beehee becomes the Naeedul Far'il)

Therefore Fi'l Mootaadee can have a Passive form

Action affects someone/something else

NOTE: If an Active Fi'l has two Mafool Beehees and is converted to Passive Fi'l –

One Mafool Beehee becomes the Naeedul Far'il and the other remains as a Mafool Beehee (a detail of What or Who)

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Incomplete Verbs - فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Fi'l Naqis - Incomplete sentence - in meaning by themselves

Considered a Noun Sentence (not a Verb Sentence)

Also known as كَانَ and its sisters

Common Incomplete Verbs (Fi'l Naqis)

Incomplete Verb	Meaning
Past Tense: كَانَ	It was With a Present Tense Fi'l – indicates a continuous past tense action With a Past Tense Fi'l – indicates a single past event
Present/Future Tense: يَكُونُ	It is
Past Tense: أَصْبَحَ	To become

Present/Future Tense: يُصْبِحُ	Became
Past Tense: ظَلَّ	He/it Remained
Present/Future Tense: يَظَلُّ	He/it Remains
Past Tense: مَا زَالَ	He/It continued – (if the مَا is removed it means “to desist” but with the مَا it means “to not desist” which means “to continue”)
Present/Future Tense: مَا يَزَالُ	He/It continues
Past Tense: مَا دَامَ	As long as (Past Tense translated in the Present Tense)
Past Tense: لَيْسَ	He is not/it is not (Past Tense translated in the Present Tense)

Common Incomplete Verbs (Fi'l Naqis)

Considered a Noun Sentence (not a Verb Sentence)

Made up of

1. Muftada

2. Khabr – becomes Nasab with كَانَ and its sisters – the Incomplete

Verbs - (instead of Rafa status in normal Noun Sentence)

3. Mootalik Bil Khabr – normal rules like a normal Noun Sentence apply
(made of Harf of Jar Fragment or Special Mudhaf of Time and Place -
Zharf)

Mubtada made of 2 things

1. Fi'l Naqis – Incomplete Verb
2. Ism that is connected to the Fi'l Naqis

The rules of Ism that is connected to Fi'l Naqis – same as the rules which apply to the Doer with a Fi'l

Two types of Ism that is connected to Fi'l Naqis

1. Outside – Ism Must come after Fi'l Naqis - Rafa in Status - Fi'l Naqis

must be in هُوَ or هِيَ which matches with Fi'l Naqis Gender

2. Inside – Ism is a Pronoun which appears inside Fi'l Naqis – which matches the pronoun (see charts below)

كَانَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past and Present/Future Tense

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ Past: كَانُوا They were Present: يَكُونُونَ They are	هُمَا Past: كَانَا Both of them were Present: يَكُونَانِ Both of them are	هُوَ Past: كَانَ He/It was Present: يَكُونُ He/It is	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ Past: كَانْنَ They (Women)	هُمَا Past: كَانَتَا Both of them were	هِيَ Past: كَانَتْ She/It was	Feminine

	were Present: يَكُنَّ They (Women) are	Present: تَكُونَانِ Both of them are	Present: تَكُونُ She/It is	
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ Past: كُنْتُمْ All of You were Present: تَكُونُونَ All of You are	أَنْتُمَا Past: كُنْتُمَا You Two were Present: تَكُونَانِ You two are	أَنْتَ Past: كُنْتَ You were Present: تَكُونُ You are	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	Feminine
	Past:	Past:	Past:	
	كُنْتُنَّ	كُنْتُمَا	كُنْتِ	
	All of You (Women) were	You Two were (Women)	You (Woman) were	
	Present:	Present:	Present:	
	تَكُنَّ	تَكُونَانِ	تَكُونِينَ	
	All of You (Women) are	You two are (Women)	You (Woman) are	
First Person	نَحْنُ	أَنَا		Both
	Past:	Past:		
	كُنَّا	كُنْتُ		
	We were	I was		
	Present:	Present:		
	نَكُونُ	أَكُونُ		

	We are	I am	
--	--------	------	--

NOTE: as the second to last letter Harakat is a Sukoon – the letter وُ with the Sukoon Harakat is removed for ease of speech

NOTE: when making Fi'l Light or Lightest – the ن at the end is only dropped if it is part of an ending combination otherwise it is kept

Examples:

أَنْتَ – تَكُونُ Normal version

ن at the end is not part of an ending combination so it is not dropped to make it Light or Lightest

أَنْتَ – تَكُونُ Light version

أَنْتَ – تَكُنْ Lightest version

أَنْتُمْ – تَكُونُونَ Normal version

ن is part of an ending combination and is therefore dropped to make the Fi'l Light or Lightest

أَنْتُمْ – تَكُونُوا Light version

أَنْتُمْ – تَكُونُوا Lightest version

Commanding Chart Example with يَكُونُ (Present/Future tense)

Only Second Person is needed

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَكُونُونَ Commanding Form = كُونُوا All of You be!	أَنْتُمَا تَكُونَانِ Commanding Form = كُونَا You Two be!	أَنْتَ تَكُونُ Commanding Form = كُنْ You be!	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتِ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	Feminine
	تَكُنَّ	تَكُونَانِ	تَكُونِينَ	
	Commanding Form =	Commanding Form =	Commanding Form =	
	كُنَّ	كُونَا	كُونِ	
	All of You (Women) be!	You Two (women) be!	You (Woman) be!	

Forbidding Chart Example with يَكُونُ (Present/Future tense)

Only Second Person is needed

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتَ	Masculine
	تَكُونُونَ	تَكُونَانِ	تَكُونُ	
	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =	

	لا تَكُونُوا	لا تَكُونَا	لا تَكُنْ	
	All of You don't be!	You Two don't be!	You don't be!	
Second Person	أَنْتِ تَكُنَّ	أَنْتُمَا تَكُونَانِ	أَنْتِ تَكُونِينَ	Feminine
	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =	
	لا تَكُنَّ	لا تَكُونَا	لا تَكُونِ	
	All of You (Women) don't be!	You Two don't be!	You (Woman) don't be!	

ظَلَّ Fi'l Naqis table for Past and Present/Future Tense

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
-----------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُمْ Past: ظَلُّوا They remained Present: يَظْلُونُ They remain	هُمَا Past: ظَلَّا Both of them remained Present: يَظْلَانِ Both of them remain	هُوَ Past: ظَلَّ He/It remained Present: يَظَلُّ He/It remains	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ Past: ظَلِلْنَ They (Women) remained Present:	هُمَا Past: ظَلَّتَا Both of them remained Present: تَظْلَانِ	هِيَ Past: ظَلَّتْ She/It remained Present: تَظَلُّ	Feminine

	يَظْلَلْنَ They (Women) remain	Both of them remain	She/It remains	
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ Past: ظَلِلْتُمْ All of You remained Present: تَظْلُلُونَ All of You remain	أَنْتُمَا Past: ظَلِلْتُمَا You Two remained Present: تَظْلَلَانِ You two remain	أَنْتِ Past: ظَلِلْتَ You remained Present: تَظْلُ You remain	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِ Past: ظَلِلْتِ 	أَنْتُمَا Past: ظَلِلْتُمَا 	أَنْتِ Past: ظَلِلْتَ 	Feminine

	All of You (Women) remained Present: تَظَلَّلْنَ All of You (Women) remain	You Two remained (Women) Present: تَظَلَّانِ You two remain (Women)	You (Woman) remained Present: تَظَلِّلْنَ You (Woman) remain	
First Person	نَحْنُ Past: ظَلَّلْنَا We remained Present: نَظَلُّ We remain	أَنَا Past: ظَلَلْتُ I remained Present: أَظَلُّ I remain		Both

مَا زَالَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past and Present/Future Tense

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ Past: مَا زَالُوا They continued Present: مَا يَزَالُونَ They continue	هُمَا Past: مَا زَالَا Both of them continued Present: مَا يَزَالَانِ Both of them continue	هُوَ Past: مَا زَالَ He/It continued Present: مَا يَزَالُ He/It continues	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ Past: مَا زِلْنَ They	هُمَا Past: مَا زَالَتَا Both of	هِيَ Past: مَا زَالَتْ She/It	Feminine

	(Women) continued Present: ما يَزْلَنَ They (Women) continue	them continued Present: ما تَزَالانِ Both of them continue	continued Present: ما تَزَالُ She/It continues	
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ Past: ما زِلْتُمْ All of You continued Present: ما تَزَالُونَ All of You continue	أَنْتُمَا Past: ما زِلْتُمَا You Two continued Present: ما تَزَالانِ You two continue	أَنْتَ Past: ما زِلْتَ You continued Present: ما تَزَالُ You continue	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	Feminine
	Past:	Past:	Past:	
	ما زِلْتُنَّ	ما زِلْتُمَا	ما زِلْتِ	
	All of You (Women) continued	You Two continued (Women)	You (Woman) continued	
	Present:	Present:	Present:	
	ما تَزَلْنَ	ما تَزَالَانِ	ما تَزَالِينَ	
	All of You (Women) continue	You two continue (Women)	You (Woman) continue	
First Person	نَحْنُ			Both
	Past:			
	ما زِلْنَا			
	We continued			
	Present:			
	أَنَا			
	Past:			
	ما زِلْتُ			
	I continued			
	Present:			

	ما نَزَالُ We continue	ما أَزَالُ I continue	
--	----------------------------------	---------------------------------	--

NOTE: if the **مَا** is removed it means “to desist” with the **مَا** it means “to not desist” which means “to continue”

مَا دَامَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past Tense

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ Past: ما دَامُوا As long as they	هُمَا Past: ما دَامَا As long as both of them	هُوَ Past: مَا دَامَ As long as he/it	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ Past: ما دُمْنَ As long as they (Women)	هُمَا Past: ما دَامَتَا As long as both of them	هِيَ Past: ما دَامَتْ As long as She/It	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ Past: ما دُمْتُمْ As long as all of you	أَنْتُمَا Past: ما دُمْتُمَا As long as you two	أَنْتَ Past: ما دُمْتَ As long as you (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ Past: ما دُمْتُنَّ As long as All of You (Women)	أَنْتُمَا Past: ما دُمْتُمَا As long as You Two (Women)	أَنْتِ Past: ما دُمْتِ As long as You (Woman)	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ Past: ما دُمْنَا As long as We		أَنَا Past: ما دُمْتُ As long as I	Both

أَصْبَحُ Fi'l Naqis table for Past and Present/Future Tense

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ Past: أَصْبَحُوا They became	هُمَا Past: أَصْبَحَا Both of them became	هُوَ Past: أَصْبَحَ He/It became	Masculine

	Present: يُصْبِحُونَ They are becoming	Present: يُصْبِحَانِ Both of them are becoming	Present: يُصْبِحُ He/It is becoming	
Third Person	هُنَّ Past: أَصْبَحْنَ They (Women) became Present: يُصْبِحْنَ They (Women) are becoming	هُمَا Past: أَصْبَحَتَا Both of them became Present: تُصْبِحَانِ Both of them are becoming	هِيَ Past: أَصْبَحَتْ She/It became Present: تُصْبِحُ She/It is becoming	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتَ	Masculine

	Past: أَصْبَحْتُمْ All of You became Present: تُصْبِحُونَ All of You are becoming	Past: أَصْبَحْتُمَا You Two became Present: تُصْبِحَانِ You two are becoming	Past: أَصْبَحْتَ You became (Man) Present: تُصْبِحُ You are becoming	
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ Past: أَصْبَحْتُنَّ All of You (Women) became Present: تُصْبِحْنَ All of You (Women) are	أَنْتُمَا Past: أَصْبَحْتُمَا You Two became (Women) Present: تُصْبِحَانِ You two are becoming	أَنْتِ Past: أَصْبَحْتِ You (Woman) became Present: تُصْبِحِينَ You are becoming	Feminine

	becoming	(Women)	(Woman)	
First Person	نَحْنُ Past: أَصْبَحْنَا We became Present: نُصْبِحُ We are becoming	أَنَا Past: أَصْبَحْتُ I became Present: أُصْبِحُ I am becoming	Both	

لَيْسَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past Tense

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ لَيْسُوا They are not	هُمَا لَيْسَا Both of them are	هُوَ لَيْسَ He/it is not	Masculine

		not		
Third Person	هُنَّ لَسْنَ They (Women) are not	هُمَا لَيْسَتَا Both of them are not	هِيَ لَيْسَتْ She/It is not	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ لَسْتُمْ All of You are not	أَنْتُمَا لَسْتُمَا You Two are not	أَنْتَ لَسْتَ You are not	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ لَسْتُنَّ All of You (Women) are not	أَنْتُمَا لَسْتُمَا You Two (Women) are not	أَنْتِ لَسْتِ You (Woman) are not	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ لَسْنَا We are not	أَنَا لَسْتُ I am not	Both
--------------	---	-------------------------------------	------

Complex Sentence Structure

In a normal Noun Sentence – the Khabr can be a Noun or a Verb Sentence

In a Fi'l Naqis Noun Sentence – the Khabr can only be a Verb Sentence

In Present Fi'l which comes after كَانَ – it can mean “was/were doing something” or “used to doing something”

Example:

“I used to work” or “I was working” – context/meaning is used to identify which is the correct meaning.

Mubtada and Khabr match in Gender and Number (just like normal Noun Sentences) - the Pronoun inside the Mubtada كَانَ will match the pronoun inside the Present Fi'l which comes after it

كَانَ usually comes with Present/Future tense Fi'l – rarely comes with Past Tense Fi'l

كَانَ Comes before Past Tense Fi'l - implies the event occurred a long time ago and occurred once

كَانَ Comes before Present Tense Fi'l - implies a continuous past tense action

Example

كُنَّا نَتَحَدَّثُ – We were talking

A Noun sentence because of كَانَ

كُنَّا - Muftada – Pronoun inside is نَحْنُ - We

نَتَحَدَّثُ - Khabr – Present Fi'l – Nasab Status (Khabr of كَانَ is Nasab)

Pronoun inside is نَحْنُ – We (matches Pronoun of كُنَّا)

The Khabr is a Present Fi'l – a Verb Sentence by itself

Negating كَانَ Sentences

Negated in the same way as a Verb Sentence (even though it is a Noun Sentence) – as they begin with a Fi'l (an Incomplete one)

Past Negation

مَا – used with Past Tense Form كَانَ

لَمْ - means: "did not" – used with Present Tense Form يَكُونُ and makes it in Lightest form – يَكُنْ – NOTE the وَ is dropped for ease of speech

Examples

كَانَ طَالِبٌ – He was a student

مَا كَانَ طَالِبٌ – He was not a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

كَانَ طَالِبٌ – He was a student

لَمْ يَكُنْ طَالِبٌ – He was not a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

Present Negation

Use لَا and مَا - both used with Present Tense Form يَكُونُ

Examples

يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is a student

مَا يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is not a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is a student

لَا يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is not a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

Future Negation

Use لَنْ - means: will not – used with Present Tense Form يَكُونُ and makes it in Light form – يَكُونَنَّ

Examples

يَكُونُ طَالِبٌ – He is a student

لَنْ يَكُونَ طَالِبٌ – He will not be a student

طَالِبٌ – Khabr for كَانَ and sisters is Nasab

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Ism vs Fi'l

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

The following helps to distinguish if a word is an Ism or a Fi'l

Fi'l

Does not have a Tanween on it

Does not have ال on it

Does not have ة on it

If the first letter is ي or ت – and ends with ون/ين = Fi'l

If word comes after قَدْ or س or سَوْفَ = Fi'l

Ism

Can have a Tanween on it

Can have ال on it

Can have ة on it

If the first letter is NOT ي or ت – and ends with ون/ين = Ism

Word comes after Harf of Jar/Jaar or Harf of Nasab or Special Mudhaf = Ism

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Question Words

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Most question words – no grammatical effect on other words

Added to the beginning of Noun Sentences and Verb Sentences

Some Question Words

Question Word	Meaning	Example in Noun Sentence	Example in Verb Sentence
أَيُّ	Which	أَيُّ هُوَ ؟ (which is it?)	فِي أَيِّ مَكَانٍ تَعْمَلُ ؟ (In which place do you work in? – or In which place does she work in?)

هَلْ / أَ	Questions with a Yes or No Answer	هَلْ أَنْتَ جَائِعٌ؟ (are you (masculine) hungry?)	هَلْ تَأْكُلُ؟ (are you eating? - or is she eating?)
كَيْفَ	How	كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟ (how are you (masculine)?)	كَيْفَ فَعَلْتَ ذَلِكَ؟ (How did you (masculine) do that?)
لِمَ / لِمَاذَا	Why	لِمَاذَا أَنْتَ سَعِيدٌ؟ (why are you (masculine) happy?)	لِمَاذَا أَكَلْتَ؟ (why did you (masculine) eat?)
أَيْنَ	Where	أَيْنَ أَنْتَ ذَاهِبٌ؟ (where are you (masculine) going?)	أَيْنَ ذَهَبْتَ؟ (where did you (masculine) go?)
مَاذَا / مَا	What	مَا هُوَ الْيَوْمَ؟ (what day is it?)	مَاذَا فَعَلْتَ؟ (what did you (masculine) do?)
مَنْ	Who	مَنْ أَنْتَ؟ (Who are you	مَنْ يَأْكُلُ؟ (who (masculine)

		(masculine)?	is eating?)
مَتَى	When	مَتَى الْرَحْلَةُ؟ (when is the flight?)	مَتَى سَيَأْتِي الْعِقَابُ؟ (when will the punishment come?)
أَيَّانَ	When (asked in a surprising or sarcastic tone)		
أَنَّى	How (asked in a surprising or sarcastic tone)		

NOTE: with مَا – it merges with Harf of Jar and the Alif in مَا is dropped – replaced with Fatah

Examples

عَمَّ يَتَسَاءَلُونَ – What are they all asking each other about?

عَمَّ – مَا question word (What) with عَنْ Harf of Jar (About)

مَا loses Alif – merges with عَنْ and takes on Fatah so meaning is “About What?”

فِي مَا – becomes فِيمَ – “In What” question

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Negation

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Some methods of negation apply:

1. Only to Noun Sentences
2. Only to Verb Sentence
3. Some apply to both

Negating Verb Sentences

Past Tense Negation

2 Ways

1. لَمْ followed by Present Tense Fi'l – Gives Past Tense meaning –

“Did not” and causes the Present Tense to take the Lightest Form

Used for confirmation of negative action i.e. statement instead of refutation

Example: He did not go to school

2. مَا followed by Past Tense Fi'l – Does not affect Grammar of other

words

Used for negation as a refutation

Example: No (you are wrong), He did not go to school

Present Tense Negation

2 Ways

1. لَا followed by Present Tense Fi'l – does not affect the grammar of

other words (different from لَا of Forbidding)

Used for confirmation of negative action i.e. statement instead of refutation

Example: He did not go to school

2. مَا followed by Present Tense Fi'l – Does not affect grammar of other

words

Used for negation as a refutation

Example: No (you are wrong), He did not go to school

Future Tense Negation

1. لَنْ followed by Present Tense Fi'l - Gives Future Tense meaning –

“Will not” and causes the Present Tense Fi'l to take the Light Form

NOTE:

لَمَّا – which means “Not yet” and causes the Present Tense Fi'l to take the Lightest Form – is also used for negation

Not linked to a particular tense – depends on context/meaning

It can also mean “when”

Negating Noun Sentences

2 Tools used for Negating Noun Sentences

1. مَا - Used for negation as a refutation

Example: No (you are wrong), He did not go to school

2. لَيْسَ – Used for confirmation of negative action i.e. statement

instead of refutation

Example: He did not go to school

These 2 tools can be used in 4 ways

1. مَا Followed by Muftada – and Khabr is in Nasab Status (in this case

it is a sister of كَانِ)

2. مَا Followed by Muftada – and بِ (Harf of Jar) is added to Khabr

and therefore makes it Jar Status

3. لَيْسَ Followed by Muftada – and Khabr is in Nasab Status (it is a

sister of كَانِ)

4. لَيْسَ Followed by Muftada – and بِ (Harf of Jar) is added to

Khabr and therefore makes it Jar Status

NOTE: Muftada is Grammatically unaffected in each case

بِ (Harf of Jar/Jaar) - is added for emphasizing the negation - meaning “not at all”

It does not change the meaning e.g. “with” is not added to the meaning of the sentence

The Khabr with this type of بِ is still a Khabr – it does not become a Mootalik Bil Khabr (which normally occurs with Harf of Jar in Noun sentences)

The مَا or لَيْسَ has no effect on an actual Mootalik Bil Khabr

Example

الرَّجُلُ مُؤْمِنٌ – The man is a believer

Four ways of Negation – The man is not a believer

مَا الرَّجُلُ مُؤْمِنٌ

Khabr of مَا is Nasab – مُؤْمِنٌ

مَا الرَّجُلُ بِمُؤْمِنٍ

Khabr of مَا is usually Nasab – مُؤْمِنٌ – but Harf of Jar بِ makes it Jar status

لَيْسَ الرَّجُلُ مُؤْمِنًا

(Khabr of لَيْسَ is Nasab - مُؤْمِنٌ)

لَيْسَ الرَّجُلُ بِمُؤْمِنٍ

Khabr of لَيْسَ is usually Nasab – مُؤْمِنٌ – but Harf of Jar بِ makes it Jar status

لَيْسَ

Is a Past Tense Irregular Fi'l – Fi'l Naqis

When Muftada being negated is a Pronoun – Independent Pronoun not used – instead the Inside Pronoun of لَيْسَ is used

لَيْسَ Fi'l Naqis table for Past Tense

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ لَيْسُوا They are not	هُمَا لَيْسَا Both of them are not	هُوَ لَيْسَ He/it is not	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ لَسْنَ They (Women) are not	هُمَا لَيْسَتَا Both of them are not	هِيَ لَيْسَتْ She/It is not	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ لَسْتُمْ All of You are not	أَنْتُمَا لَسْتُمَا You Two are not	أَنْتَ لَسْتَ You are not	Masculine
Second	أَنْتُنَّ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	Feminine

Person	لَسْتُنَّ All of You (Women) are not	لَسْتُمَا You Two (Women) are not	لَسْتُ You (Woman) are not	
First Person	نَحْنُ لَسْنَا We are not		أَنَا لَسْتُ I Did not	Both

NOTE: the **ي** is dropped from **هُنَّ** onwards

Examples

لَسْتُ مُؤْمِنٌ - I am not a believer

لَسْتُ - Mubtada - أَنَا version – Masculine (assumed) and Singular

Khabr of لَيْسَ forms is Nasab – مُؤْمِنٌ – Masculine and Singular

The Number and Gender must match between the لَيْسَ form and the Khabr

In the example, both are Masculine and Single

لَسْنَ مُؤْمِنَاتٍ – Those are not believing women

لَسْنَ - Muftada - هُنَّ version – Feminine and Plural

Khabr of لَيْسَ forms is Nasab - مُؤْمِنَاتٍ - Feminine and Plural

The Number and Gender must match between the لَيْسَ form and the Khabr

In the example, both are Feminine and Plural

Absolute Categorical Negation

Only in Noun Sentences

Means: Absolutely not – negates all possibility

Made up of

لا – a type called Nafeeyahtu Lilginsee - النَّافِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ –

Followed by Ism – which is Light and in Nasab Status

Both together – make the Muftada

NOTE: Nafeeyahtu Lilginsee is 3rd reason to make an Ism light (1st: Mudhaf, 2nd: Partly Flexible Words)

Example

لَا ضَيْرَ – Absolutely no harm .

لَا - Nafeeyahtu Lilginsee

ضَيْرَ – Ism – which is Light and Nasab status

Negating Tools for Noun and Verb Sentences

2 Tools

1. إِنْ + إِلَّا – more emphatic

2. مَا + إِلَّا

Both create “nothing but” meaning

Example:

He is “nothing but” a human

In Noun Sentence meaning = A is nothing but Y

In Verb Sentence meaning = A did/does nothing but Y

Both have no grammatical effect on other words

If they are removed – normal positive sentence remains

Example:

He is “nothing but” a human

“nothing but” removed = He is a human

Examples

Noun Sentences

إِنَّ هَذَا إِلَّا مَلَكٌ كَرِيمٌ - This is “nothing but” a noble Angel

مَا هِيَ إِلَّا حَيَاتُنَا الدُّنْيَا – It is “nothing but” our worldly life

Verb Sentence

مَا نَقَمُوا إِلَّا أَنْ أَغْنَاهُمُ اللَّهُ – They resented “nothing except” that Allah (SWT) had enriched them

مِنْ الزَّائِدَةِ - Min Zaeeda

A Zaeeda word can attach to an Ism without changing its role in the sentence – but creates an emphasized effect in the meaning.

Min Zaeeda – creates – “not a single” or “any”

Conditions for Min Zaeeda

1. Comes in Negating sentence or Questioning Sentence
2. Next word will always be Common
3. Sentence still makes sense if it is removed

Examples

Noun Sentence

مَا لَهُ مَالٌ – He does not have wealth

مَا لَهُ مِنْ مَالٍ – He does not have “any” wealth

Min Zaeeda attaches to Muftada (مَالٌ) – and makes it Jar Status

Verb Sentence

مَا يَضْرِبُ الرَّجُلُ أَحَدًا – the man did not hit anyone

مَا يَضْرِبُ الرَّجُلُ مِنْ أَحَدٍ – the man did not hit a “single” person

Min Zaeeda can attach to the Doer (Far'il) or a Mafool Beehee (أَحَدًا) and makes it Jar Status

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

The Compound Ism

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

When a part of a sentence functions like an ordinary Ism

2 Tools for making Compound Isms

1. أَنْ – which makes a Present/Future Tense Fi'l Light
2. أَنَّ – Harf of Nasab – makes its Ism into Nasab status

أَنَّ الْمَصْدَرِيَّةَ

Transforms a Verb sentence into an Ism

Usually comes with Present/Future Tense even when speaking about the Past

Example

أَنْ تَصُومُوا خَيْرٌ لَكُمْ – That you all fast is better for you all

أَنْ تَصُومُوا - is acting as the Muftada

خَيْرٌ – Khabr

لَكُمْ – Mootalik Bil Khabr

أَنْ – Changed the Verb sentence into a Compound Ism

أَنَّ

Changes a Noun Sentence into a Compound Ism

Example

حَتَّى يَتَبَيَّنَ لَهُمْ أَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ - Until it becomes clear to them that it is the truth

يَتَبَيَّنَ (in Light version because of حَتَّى) - acts like a Outside Doer for the Present Tense Fi'l أَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Miscellaneous Words

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

إِذْ

Special Mudhaf of Time and Place - Zharf

Means “when” - translates in the Past Tense always

Comes with Noun and Verb Sentences

Comes with Present/Future and Past Tense Fi'l

Example

إِذْ تَذْهَبُ – When you left

تَذْهَبُ - is Present tense but still translated in the Past tense because of

إِذْ

إِذَا

Special Mudhaf of Time and Place - Zharf

Means “suddenly” – when it comes before a Noun Sentence - إِذَا

الْفُجَائِيَّةُ

Comes with Noun and Verb Sentences

Comes with Present/Future and Past Tense Fi'l

When it comes before a Fi'l – it creates a Conditional Statement (When A happens, B will happen...) - إِذَا الشَّرْطِيَّةُ - Means “when” - translates in the Future Tense when it comes before a Verb Sentence

If it comes with Past Tense Fi'l – indicates a single event (still translated into the Future)

If it comes with Present/Future Tense Fi'l – indicates a repeated event (still translated into the Future)

Examples

Noun Sentence

فَإِذَا هِيَ تُعَبَّانُ مُبِينٌ - Then, suddenly, it became a manifest snake

Verb Sentence

إِذَا ذَهَبْتَ إِلَى بَيْتِكَ تَأْكُلُ – When you go to your house, you will eat

ذَهَبْتَ – Past Tense Fi'l but translated into future tense because of إِذَا

Condition statement created

يَوْمَ

Special Mudhaf of Time and Place - Zharf

Means “day” – translates to meaning “the day on which”

Comes with Noun and Present/Future tense Verb Sentences

Example

يَوْمَ تَشْهَدُ عَلَيْهِمُ أَلْسِنُهُمْ – The day on which, their tongues will testify against them

قَدْ

Means – “already” used for emphasis

Only comes with Verb sentences

Has no grammatical effect on other words

With a Past Tense Fi'l called حَرْفُ تَحْقِيقٍ

With a Present Tense Fi'l called حَرْفُ تَقْلِيلٍ

سَ / سَوْفَ

Only with Present Tense Fi'l

Pushes meaning into Future Tense

Has no grammatical effect on other words

سَوْفَ - translates as “soon” in the future (more of a nearer event then
(سَ)

Example

سَوْفَ تَعْلَمُونَ - Very soon, you all will know

Translated into the Future Tense

إِمَّا

Means “either”

Always used twice in sentence “either A or b”

Has no grammatical effect on other words

Called - حَرْفُ تَخْيِيرٍ

Example

إِمَّا أَنْ تَذْهَبَ إِمَّا لَا – Either you go or not

أَفْعَالُ الشُّرُوعِ - Fi'l Shuruee

These Fi'ls come before another Fi'l to indicate the beginning of an action

Example:

Yusuf began eating

Fi'l Shuruee - began

Normal Fi'l – eating

The Fi'l Shuruee can have an Outside Doer like a normal Fi'l

Some Fi'l Shuruee

Fi'l	Meaning
طَفِقَ يَطْفِقُ	To begin quickly
بَدَأَ يَبْدَأُ	To begin
جَعَلَ يَجْعَلُ	To begin – when used as a Fi'l Shuruee To make – when used normally
أَخَذَ يَأْخُذُ	To begin – when used as a Fi'l Shuruee To take/seize – when used normally

Showing Surprise – تَعَجُّبٌ

Can be used to show a negative or a positive amazement/surprise

Examples

A Positive Amazement: How smart he is!

A Negative Amazement: How rude he is!

Examples

نِعْمَ – shows Positive Amazement

بِئْسَ – shows Negative Amazement

They are both Fi'l

Both are Lazim (Intransitive) – do not take a Mafool Beehee

Often followed by an Ism in Rafa status – the Outside Doer

In the Holy Quran only the هُوَ versions of the Fi'l are used

Examples

بِئْسَ الْمِهَادُ - What are terrible resting place!

نِعْمَ الثَّوَابُ - What an excellent reward!

مَا أَفْعَلَهُ

Translates as “How...he is”

Made up 3 Parts:

1. مَا – مَا of showing astonishment

2. Second word – tells what the shocking trait is and follows pattern

أَفْعَلْ

3. Last word – explains who possesses the shocking trait

Examples

مَا أَكْفَرُهُ - How disbelieving he is!

مَا أَخْمَقَهَا – How foolish she is!

أَفْعَلُ بِهِ

Translates as “How...he is”

Made up of 2 Parts:

1. First Word – mentions the shocking trait – follows pattern – أَفْعَلْ

2. A Harf of Jar بِ with a Majroor attached to it - explains who

possesses the shocking trait

Example

أَسْمِعْ بِهِمْ وَأَبْصِرْ - How (amazingly) they will hear and see

Ataf upon Pronoun

An Ataf (Connecting word) such as **وَ** can only come between two similar words e.g. 2 Isms

Example

I and my brother ate:

أَكَلْتُ وَأَخِي – This would be wrong as an Ataf cannot come between a Fi'l and an Ism

أَكَلْتُ أَنَا وَأَخِي – Correct way – the Pronoun أَنَا within the Fi'l (أَكَلْتُ) is pulled out so that the Ataf **وَ** comes in between 2 Isms

أَ and أَمْ

When they come together they produce a meaning “whether.....or whether...”

Example

أَمْ أَنْذَرْتَهُمْ أَمْ لَمْ تُنذِرْهُمْ – whether you warn them or whether you do not warn them

إِسْمٌ تَفْضِيلٌ – Comparatives/Superlatives - Ism Tafdeel

Follows the pattern: أَفْعَلُ

An Ism Tafdeel can become a Superlative when:

1. When ال is added to it
2. When the Ism Tafdeel is a Mudhaf

Examples

Ism Tafdeel/Comparative	Meaning	Superlative	Meaning
أَكْبَرُ	Greater	الْأَكْبَرُ	The greatest
أَكْثَرُ	More	الْأَكْثَرُ	The most
أَحْسَنُ	Better	الْأَحْسَنُ	The best

Ism Tafdeel as a Mudhaf can take 3 Forms

Ism Tafdeel/ Comparative as a Mudhaf	Meaning	Characteristics
أَكْبَرُ الْكِتَابِ	The greatest part of the book	Mudhaf Alia is – Singular and Proper
أَكْبَرُ الْكُتُبِ	The greatest of the books	Mudhaf Alia is – Plural and Proper
أَكْبَرُ كِتَابٍ	The greatest book	Mudhaf Alia is – Singular and Common

أَلَا - to/that not

Combination of لا of negation and أَنْ

أَنْ – makes the Present Tense Fi'l in Light Form

Example

وَمَا لَكُمْ أَلَّا تَأْكُلُوا – And what is wrong with you all that you do not eat

أَمَّا – As for

أَمْ – Or

أَنَّمَا and إِنَّمَا – Only

كُلَّمَا - Every time

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

إِسْمُ الْمَوْصُولِ وَصِلَتُهُ - Ism Mowsool

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

A Compound Ism

Made up of 2 Parts:

1. Ism Mowsool - **إِسْمُ الْمَوْصُولِ**
2. Seelatun – **صِلَةٌ** – sentence that comes directly after Ism Mowsool

Ends when there is no grammatical connection between a word and the next one

The Ism Mowsool Chart

Ism Mowsool Chart

	مَنْ	مَا
	Whoever	Whatever
Plural	Dual	Single
الَّذِينَ	الَّذَانِ	الَّذِي
Those who (Masculine)	The two who (Masculine)	The one who (Masculine)
الَّتِي الَّتِي	الَّتَانِ	الَّتِي
Those who (Feminine)	The two who (Feminine)	The one who (Feminine)

The Dual Forms are Fully Flexible

All the Rest are Non-Flexible

Uses of Ism Mowsool

On a Sentence Level they can act like a:

1. Fi'l
2. Mafool
3. Masdar
4. Khabr
5. Outside Doer

On a Fragment Level they can act like a:

1. Siffa
2. Mudhaf Alai
3. Ism of Harf of Nasab **إِنَّ**
4. Majroor
5. Outside Doer

The Aareedun **عَائِدُ**

Aareedun is a Pronoun connected to the Seelatun which refers back to the Ism Mowsool

Pronoun appears as: Attached, Independent, Inside or Implied

Aareedun Matches in Number and Gender to Ism Mowsool

It is ignored when translating into English

Attached Aareedun – required when Ism Mawsool and the subject of the Seelatun are discussing different things

Example

رَأَيْتُ الَّذِي ضَرَبَ - I saw the one who hit

Ism Mawsool – الَّذِي

Seelatun – ضَرَبَ – Past Tense Fi'l

The Ism Mawsool الَّذِي is talking about the person who hit

The Seelatun ضَرَبَ is also talking about the person who hit

Attached Aareedun not required

رَأَيْتُ الَّتِي ضَرَبَهَا - I saw the one (feminine) who he hit

Ism Mawsool – الَّتِي – Singular and Feminine

Seelatun – ضَرَبَ – Past Tense Fi'l (Singular and Masculine)

Aareedun – Attached Pronoun هَا - Singular and Feminine

The Ism Mawsool **الَّتِي** is talking about the woman who was hit

The Seelatun **ضَرَبَ** is talking about the man who hit her

Attached Aareedun is required to show the Ism Mawsool is referring to the woman who was hit and not the man who hit her

If the Ism Mawsool was referring to the man who hit her – it would be **الَّذِي** (Single and Masculine) – which would then match the Fi'l **ضَرَبَ** in Number and Gender

When the Fi'l is a Siffa (description)

A Proper Ism is followed by an Ism Mawsool to make a Fi'l which comes after the Ism Mawsool a Siffa (Seelatun which acts as a Siffa)

Example

الرَّجُلُ الَّذِي يَتَحَدَّثُ – A man who is talking

Ism Mawsool is needed as the Ism is Proper **الرَّجُلُ** – the Ism Mawsool makes the Fi'l that comes after it **يَتَحَدَّثُ** – a Siffa – a description

Ism and the Ism Mawsool must match in Gender and Number

الرَّجُلُ – Ism – Masculine and Singular

الَّذِي – Ism Mawsool – Masculine and Singular

A Common Ism does not need to be followed by an Ism Mawsool to make a Fi'l which comes after the Ism Mawsool a Siffa (Seelatun which acts as a Siffa)

Example

رَجُلٌ يَتَحَدَّثُ – A man talking

Ism Mawsool is not needed as the Ism is Common then followed by a Fi'l - which acts a Siffa – a description

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Conditional Statement - الْجُمْلَةُ الشَّرْطِيَّةُ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Conditional statement is made of 2 parts/statements:

1. The Condition - الشَّرْطُ
2. The Response of the Condition - جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ

Even though most conditional statements translate into the Present/Future tense irrespective of what tense is used within the conditional statement but:

When the Past Tense is used it usually indicates a single event

When the Present Tense is used it usually indicates a recurring event

Example

If you go to school, I will give you a present

The Condition: If you go to school

The Response of the Condition: I will give you a present

Tools of Conditional Statements

1. Tools that make both parts of the Conditional Statement in Lightest

Form (when dealing with Present Tense) - **أَدَوَاتُ الشَّرْطِ**

الْجَازِمَةُ

2. Tools that have no grammatical effect on other words - **أَدَوَاتٌ غَيْرُ**

جَازِمَةٍ

Not all tools which create a Conditional Statement will do so in every case, as many of these tools are used in other grammatical ways. Context/meaning and grammatical changes must be observed to determine whether a statement is conditional or not

Tools that change Grammar **أَدَوَاتُ الشَّرْطِ الْجَازِمَةُ**

Different Tools with unique meanings but same grammatical rules:

1. Tools make both the Condition and the Response of the Condition in

Lightest form (when they are in Present Tense)

2. Translated in Present Tense (even when Past Tense is used)

3. Sometimes **فَ** is added to the Response of the Condition – usually

when the Condition and the Response of the Condition are different

e.g. one is Present Tense and the other is Past Tense or one is Fi'l

and the other is an Ism

إِنْ – If

Examples

إِنْ عُدْتُمْ عُدْنَا – If you all return, We will return

The Condition: إِنْ عُدْتُمْ

Response of the Condition: عُدْنَا

Both are Past Tense Fi'l but translated in the Present Tense

إِنْ تُصِيبَكُمْ سَيِّئَةٌ يَفْرَحُوا بِهَا – If evil strikes you all, they are happy with it

The Condition: إِنْ تُصِيبَكُمْ سَيِّئَةٌ - Present Tense in Lightest Form

Normal Form: تُصِيبُكُمْ – Lightest Form: تُصِيبُكُمْ

Response of the Condition: يَفْرَحُوا بِهَا - Present Tense in Lightest Form

Normal Form: يَفْرَحُونَ – Lightest Form: يَفْرَحُوا

إِنْ تَكْفُرُوا فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ غَنِيٌّ عَنْكُمْ - If you all disbelieve, then Allah is Free from need of you all

The Condition: إِنْ تَكْفُرُوا - Present Tense in Lightest form

Response of the Condition: فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ غَنِيٌّ عَنْكُمْ

Noun Sentence

ف is added to the Response of the Condition – as the Condition (Verb Sentence - Present Tense) and the Response of the Condition (Noun Sentence) are different

مَنْ - Whoever

Different from the مَنْ which is an Ism Mawsool

Example

مَنْ يَتَوَكَّلْ عَلَى اللَّهِ فَهُوَ حَسْبُهُ - Whoever places trust upon Allah (SWT) then He will suffice him

The Condition: مَنْ يَتَوَكَّلْ عَلَى اللَّهِ Present Tense in Lightest form

Response of the Condition: فَهُوَ حَسْبُهُ

Noun Sentence

ف is added to the Response of the Condition – as the Condition (Verb Sentence - Present Tense) and the Response of the Condition (Noun Sentence) are different

مَا - Whatever

Different from the مَا which is an Ism Mawsool

Often comes with مِنْ (from) which acts as a clarifier of the “whatever” condition

Example

مَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ بِهِ عَلِيمٌ - Whatever you all do from any good, then indeed Allah (SWT) is All Knowing of it

The Condition: مَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ - Present Tense in Lightest form

Response of the Condition: فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ بِهِ عَلِيمٌ

Noun Sentence

ف is added to the Response of the Condition – as the Condition (Verb Sentence - Present Tense) and the Response of the Condition (Noun Sentence) are different

أَيْنَمَا - Wherever

Example

أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا يُدْرِكُكُمُ الْمَوْتُ - Wherever you all may be, Death will overtake you all

The Condition: أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا - Present Tense in Lightest form

Response of the Condition: يُدْرِكُكُمُ الْمَوْتُ

Present Tense in Lightest form (no ف needed)

أَدَوَاتُ غَيْرِ جَازِمَةٍ - Tools that do not change Grammar

There are two types – which have own meaning and rules

لَوْ - Had

Has no grammatical effect on other words

Used for highly unlikely or hypothetical cases

Means: “Had...” or “Had it been the case...”

Translates in the Past Tense

Often find **لَ** on the Response of the Condition – which means “then”

Example

لَوْ يُطِيعُكُمْ فِي كَثِيرٍ مِّنَ الْأَمْرِ لَعَنِتُّمْ – Had, he obeyed you all in much of the matter, then you all would be in difficulty

An unlikely/hypothetical event

The Condition: لَوْ يُطِيعُكُمْ فِي كَثِيرٍ مِّنَ الْأَمْرِ

لَوْ - has no grammatical effect on the other words

Response of the Condition: **لَعَنِتُّمْ**

ل on the Response of the Condition – meaning “then”

إِذَا - When

Has no grammatical effect on other words

Used for highly likely events

With Present Tense – translated in Present/Future Tense and indicates repeated event

With Past Tense – translated in Present/Future Tense and indicates a single event

Sometimes **فَ** is added to the Response of the Condition – usually when the Condition and the Response of the Condition are different e.g. one is Present Tense and the other is Past Tense or one is Fi'l and the other is an Ism

Means “suddenly” – when it comes before a Noun Sentence - **إِذَا**
الْفُجَائِيَّةُ

Example

إِذَا جَاءَ نَصْرُ اللَّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ..... فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ

When the help of Allah and the victory comes...then glorify with praise of your Lord and seek His forgiveness

A highly likely event

The Condition: إِذَا جَاءَ نَصْرُ اللَّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ

إِذَا - has no grammatical effect on the other words

Response of the Condition: فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ

ف is added to the Response of the Condition – as the Condition (Verb Sentence - Past Tense) and the Response of the Condition (Verb Sentence – Command Form) are different

Translated in Present/Future Tense

Command and Response of Command - الْأَمْرُ وَجَوَابُ الْأَمْرِ

Translated in Present/Future Tense

Made up of 2 Parts:

1. The Command – Fi'l Command Form
2. Response of the Command – explains what will happen when the command is fulfilled

Not all Commands have a Response of the Command

Example: Work! You will earn money

The Command: Work!

Response of the Command: You will earn money

Rules

The Command – is a normal Fi'l Command Form structure

Response of the Command – is in Lightest Form

Example

إِتَّبِعُونِ أَهْدِيكُمْ – You all follow me, then I will guide you all

The Command: إِتَّبِعُونِ

Response of the Command: أَهْدِيكُمْ - Present Tense in Lightest Form

فَاءُ السَّبَبِيَّةِ - Faa Sababiya

Similar to Command and Response of Command but used for Forbidding

Translates as “Don’t do...otherwise...”

Made of 3 Parts:

1. Forbidding Statement
2. Faa Sababiya

3. Fi'l after the Faa Sababiya – which is in Light version

Example

وَلَا تَرْتَدُّوا عَلَىٰ أَدْبَارِكُمْ فَتَنْقَلِبُوا خُسِرِينَ - You all do not turn back upon your heels otherwise you will turn back as losers

لَا تَرْتَدُّوا – Forbidding Statement

فَتَنْقَلِبُوا – the Faa Sababiya فَ attached to the Fi'l in Light version

Faa Sababiya as a Wish/Desire

Faa Sababiya can also be used in a statement which mentions a wish or a desire

Again – the Faa Sababiya will attach to the Fi'l (after the wish and desire) and make the Fi'l in Light Version

Can translate to mean “as a result”

Example

لَعَلِّي أَبْلُغُ الْأَسْبَابَ ۖ الْأَسْبَابَ السَّمَوَاتِ فَأَطَّلِعَ إِلَىٰ إِلَهِ مُوسَىٰ -

Perhaps I will reach the means, the means to the skies, then (as a result) I will look at the God of Musa.

لَعَلِّي أَبْلُغُ الْأَسْبَابَ^ل أَسْبَابَ السَّمَوَاتِ - the statement showing a desire/wish

فَأَطَّلَعَ - the Faa Sabibiya فَ attached to the Fi'l in Light version

Some words which are used to express a desire or a wish:

Word	Meaning
لَيْتَ	If only (Harf of Nasab)
لَعَلَّ	Perhaps (Harf of Nasab)
عَسَى	Hopefully/Perhaps
لَوْ/ لَوْلَا	If/Had/
هَلْ	Did/Is (Yes or no question)

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

الْحَالُ - Haal - Condition/State

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Gives information about the state or condition of something/someone when the action is carried out

Answers the question – how did it happen

The person or thing in that state is called the Companion of the State/Haal -

صَاحِبُ الْحَالِ

Examples

Yusuf studied while tired

Action: studied

Companion of the State: Yusuf

Condition: while tired

The man came down slowly

Action: came down

Companion of the State: The man

Condition: slowly

Yusuf went to college moaning

Action: went to college

Companion of the State: Yusuf

Condition: moaning

When translating a condition it appears as:

1. An adverb “-ly”
2. “-ing” words
3. With words “while” or “as”

Rules of Condition/Haal:

Only appears in a complete sentence

Companion of Haal/State – is Proper

If Haal removed – sentence is still complete in Arabic grammar

Haal appears in 1 of 3 Forms:

1. Ism in Nasab Status

2. Verb Sentence

3. Noun Sentence that starts with **وَحَالِيَّةٍ - و**

Examples

Yusuf studied while tired – Yusuf studied

The man came down slowly - The man came down

Yusuf went to college moaning - Yusuf went to college

Haal/State is removed and sentences still make sense

Haal as an Ism

Usually appears as an Ism Far'il or Ism Mafool

Sometimes as Ism Siffa and Masdar

Haal and Companion of the Haal – matches in Gender and Number

Ism is in Nasab status

Example

فَخَرَجَ مِنْهَا خَائِفًا – then he left from it while afraid

Action: **خَرَجَ**

Companion of the Haal: “He” – Hidden Pronoun هُوَ inside the Fi’l خَرَجَ (Singular and Masculine)

Haal: خَائِفًا – while afraid

Haal is Ism Far’il in Nasab Status

Haal Matches in Gender and Number to the Companion of the Haal – Singular and Masculine

Verb Sentence as a Haal

Often shows as 2 Verb Sentences next to each other

Haal only appears in a complete sentence

Example

Present Tense

يَذَرُهُمْ فِي طُغْيَانِهِمْ يَعْمَهُونَ - He leaves them in their transgression while they are wandering blindly

Action: يَذَرُ

Companion of the Haal: “them” Attached Pronoun هُمْ of Fi’l يَذَرُ (Plural and Masculine)

Haal: يَعْمَهُونَ – Present Tense Fi’l (Plural and Masculine)

Haal Matches in Gender and Number to the Companion of the Haal –
Plural and Masculine

Past Tense

When Past Tense is a Haal – وَقَدْ – comes before it

Means: “while...has” or “while...already has”

There is no Companion of the Haal

Example

لَا تَخْتَصِمُوا لَدَيَّ وَقَدْ قَدَّمْتُ إِلَيْكُمْ بِالْوَعِيدِ – Do not dispute in

My presence while already I had sent forward to you all the warning

وَقَدْ - وَقَدْ قَدَّمْتُ إِلَيْكُمْ بِالْوَعِيدِ comes before the Past Tense Fi'l acting as a Haal

Noun Sentence as a Haal

Always starts with a وَ حَالِيَّةٍ - وَ

وَ often is followed by an Independent Pronoun

Example

مَنْ عَمِلَ صَالِحًا مِّنْ ذَكَرٍ أَوْ أَنْثَىٰ وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ فَلَنُحْيِيَنَّهٗ حَيٰوةً

طَيِّبَةً - Whoever does righteousness, whether male or female, while he is

a believer - We will surely cause him to live a good life

هُوَ followed by an Independent pronoun وَ - وَهُوَ مُؤْمِنٌ which is

followed by an Ism مُؤْمِنٌ acting as a Haal

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

The Clarifier – Tamyeez – التَّمْيِيزُ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Tamyeez is used to clarify or add detail to a word which is ambiguous
Often translated as “in terms of...”

Rules of Tamyeez:

1. Singular
2. Common
3. Nasab
4. Comes after the ambiguous word

Tamyeez used in Ism Tafdeel (Comparison/Superlative)

A comparison word does not fully explain the comparison

Example:

“Yusuf is greater than John”

Greater in what? A Tamyeez is used to clarify the what

“Yusuf is greater than John in height”

The Tamyeez is “in height”

Example

مَنْ أَحْسَنُ قَوْلًا – Who is better in speech

Ism Tafdeel (Comparative) – أَحْسَنُ - better

Tamyeez – قَوْلًا – in speech

Tamyeez is Singular – Common - Nasab – comes after the ambiguous word

The Tamyeez clarifies how the person is better – better in speech

Some Fi'ls that use a Tamyeez

Fi'l	Meaning
مَلَأَ	To fill
زَادَ	To increase something or someone

إِزْدَادًا	To increase oneself
كَفَى	To be sufficient
سَاءَ	To be terrible
حَسُنَ	To be good

Examples

مِلْءُ الْأَرْضِ ذَهَبًا – full capacity of the Earth in (terms of) gold

مِلْءُ الْأَرْضِ – Ambiguous term

ذَهَبًا – Tamyeez

Tamyeez is Singular – Common - Nasab – comes after the ambiguous word -

The Tamyeez clarifies a full capacity of the Earth of what – of gold

مَا زَادَهُمْ إِلَّا إِيمَانًا وَتَسْلِيمًا - It did not increase them except in faith and submission

زَادَهُمْ - Ambiguous word

إِيْمَانًا - Tamyeez 1 –

تَسْلِيْمًا - Tamyeez 2

Both Tamyeez are Singular – Common - Nasab – come after the ambiguous word

The Tamyeez clarifies increased how – in faith and submission

سَاءَتْ مَصِيْرًا - Evil it is as a destination

سَاءَتْ - Ambiguous word

مَصِيْرًا - Tamyeez

Tamyeez is Singular – Common - Nasab – comes after the ambiguous word

The Tamyeez clarifies how is it evil – as a destination

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Substitute - Badl - البَدَلُ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Consists of an Ism followed by another Ism

Second Ism clarifies and gives more detail about the first Ism

In between the two Isms - translation implies “in other words”

Example: Yusuf, (in other words) the principal, is here

If one of the two Isms is removed – the sentence still makes sense

Yusuf is here – The principal is here

The Two Isms match in Status

Examples

بِالنَّاصِيَةِ نَاصِيَةٍ كَاذِبَةٍ خَاطِئَةٍ - by the forelock, a lying, sinning
forelock

بِالنَّاصِيَةِ – 1st Ism - attached to Harf of Jar بِ – Jar Status

نَاصِيَةٍ – 2nd Ism – Jar Status

The Status matches between the two Isms

Badal between the two Isms – both match in Status and can replace each other

The second Ism is a Mawsoof (Yellow highlight)

The final two Isms are Siffas (descriptions) – they match the Mawsoof in all 4 Properties (Gender, Number, Type and Status) (Blue highlight)

وَالِي عَادِ أَخَاهُمْ هُودًا – And to Aad (was sent) their brother, Hud

أَخَاهُمْ – 1st Ism – Nasab Status

هُودًا – 2nd Ism – Nasab Status

Badal between the two Isms – both match in Status and can replace each other

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Sarf – Morphology

“To assign meanings to words through patterns and endings”

Understanding Sarf - صَرْفٌ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Used to construct many words with different meanings from a single word (meanings are connected)

مُشْتَقٌّ – Words which Sarf can be done on (Most Arabic Words)

جَامِدٌ – Words which Sarf cannot be done on

Every Arabic Word has Root Letters

Most Words have 3 Root Letters - جَذْرٌ

1st Letter called - فَ الْكَلِمَةِ

2nd Letter called - عَ الْكَلِمَةِ

3rd Letter called - لَ الْكَلِمَةِ

These 3 Root Letters are used to construct other words with different meanings which have a connection to one another

Example

3 Root Letters: ض ر ب

ضَرَبَ – He Hit

يَضْرِبُ – He is Hitting

ضَرْبٌ – Hitting

ضَارِبٌ – The one who Hits

مَضْرُوبٌ – The one who is Hit

Every 3 Root letters – can be put into a specific Family to create many different words – with similar meanings – other letters and Harakat are often added to the 3 Root letters

Every Family الْبَابُ includes the following parts

Family Part	Meaning
الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي	Past Tense Fi'l

الفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ	Present/Future Tense Fi'l
الفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
الفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ	Passive Present Tense Fi'l
فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ	Commanding Fi'l
فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ	Forbidding Fi'l
المَصْدَرُ	Idea (Masdar) – Ism
إِسْمُ فَاعِلٍ	The Doer of the Action (Ism Far'il) – Ism
إِسْمُ مَفْعُولٍ	The thing the Action is done to (Ism Mafool) - Ism
إِسْمُ ظَرْفٍ	Time/Place the Action takes place (Zharf) - Ism

NOTE: 4 Isms and 6 Fi'ls

Each Family part **الصِّيْغَةُ** follows a particular pattern which applies to any 3 Root Letters which are constructed in that Family

Example

3 Root Letters	Added into a specific Family (Shown in the Present/Future Tense)
ع ل م	يَتَعَلَّمُ
ف س د	يَتَفَسَّدُ
س ل م	يَتَسَلَّمُ
ر م ق	يَتَرَمَّقُ

NOTE: these words have been constructed for understanding purposes – they are not necessarily real Arabic words

In each case the first two letters with the same Harakat remain in each

case - يَتَ (Blue highlight)

The Shadda ّ remains on the second to last letter with the same Fatah on it in each case (Green highlight)

In each case the last letter has a dhamma on it (Purple highlight)

Only the 3 root letters have been exchanged in each case but the pattern remains the same

This approach applies to all the different Families – but each Family has its own pattern, with specific characteristics, which the members within that family follow

Two Types of Families

1. Small Families - الْمُجَرَّدُ
2. Big Families - الْمَزِيدُ فِيهِ

Small Families - الْمُجَرَّدُ

In the هُوَ Past Tense version only the 3 root letters are present (but the Harakat may vary)

Examples

ضَرَبَ – He Hit

عَلِمَ – He Knows

بَعَدَ – He was Distant

Small Families have extra Family Parts

They take the same form across all Sub Families

Family Part	Meaning	Pattern
إِسْمُ آلَةٍ	A Tool/Device for doing the action (Ism Alatun) - Ism	مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ

		مِفْعَلَةٌ
إِسْمُ تَفْضِيلٍ	Comparatives/Superlatives (Ism Tafdeel) - Ism	أَفْعَلُ
إِسْمُ صِفَةٍ	Adjectives for Permanent Qualities (Ism Siffa) - Ism	فَعِيلٌ فَعِلٌ
إِسْمُ مُبَالَغَةٍ	A Magnified version of the Doer (the Ism Far'il) - Ism	فَعَّالٌ فَعْلَانُ (partly flexible) فَعُولٌ فَعَّيْلٌ فُعُولٌ

المَزِيدُ فِيهِ - Big Families

Extra letters are always added to the 3 root letters in every form

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

المُجَرَّدُ - Small Families

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Labelled as Family 1 - includes all the Small Families

6 Sub Families within Family 1

Differentiating one Sub Family to another – observe the Harakat on the Past Tense and Present/Future Tense Forms

Masdar in these families do not follow a particular pattern so can vary. This must be looked up in a Arabic dictionary in order to learn what the Masdar is for each word (discussed in the [Dictionary Chapter](#))

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 1

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l

فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعُلُ	فَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلٌ مَفْعِلٌ مَفْعَلَةٌ	لا تَفْعُلْ	أَفْعُلْ

Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Fatah's on all 3 Root Letters (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Dhamma's on 2nd and 3rd Root Letters (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have م at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2nd Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l Form– the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 1 – Using خ ل ق

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
خَالِقٌ	خَلْقًا	يَخْلُقُ	خَلَقَ
The one who is	Creation	He is creating	He/it created

creating			
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَخْلُوقٌ	خَلَقًا	يُخْلَقُ	خُلِقَ
The one who is being created	Creation	He is being created	He was created
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِخْلَقٌ مِخْلَاقٌ مِخْلَقَةٌ	مَخْلَقٌ مَخْلِيقٌ مَخْلَقَةٌ	لا تَخْلُقْ	اُخْلُقْ
Tool for creating	Time and Place of creating	You (Male) don't create!	You (Male) create!

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

For memorization the ل ع ف Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعُلُ	فَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلٌ مَفْعِلٌ مَفْعَلَةٌ	لا تَفْعِلْ	إفْعِلْ

--	--	--	--

Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Fatah's on all 3 Root Letters (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Kasra on 2nd Root Letter (3rd Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have م at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2nd Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l Form – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 2 – Using غ ل ب

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l

غَالِبٌ	غَلَبًا	يَغْلِبُ	غَلِبَ
The one who is dominating	Domination	He is dominating	He/it dominated
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَغْلُوبٌ	غَلَبًا	يُغْلَبُ	غُلِبَ
The one who is being dominated	Domination	He is being dominating	He was dominated
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِغْلَبٌ مِغْلَابٌ مِغْلَبَةٌ	مَغْلَبٌ مَغْلِبٌ مَغْلَبَةٌ	لَا تَغْلِبُ	اِغْلِبْ
Tool for	Time and Place	You (Male) don't	You (Male)

Dominating	of Domination	dominate!	dominate!
------------	---------------	-----------	-----------

فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 3

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعَلُ	فَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form

مِفْعَلٌ	مَفْعَلٌ	لا تَفْعَلْ	إِفْعَلْ
مِفْعَالٌ	مَفْعِلٌ		
مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلَةٌ		

Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Fatah's on all 3 Root Letters (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Fatah on 2nd Root Letter (3rd Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have مٌ at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2nd Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفْعَلُ – (this in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 3 – Using ب ع ث

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
بَاعِثٌ	بَعَثًا	يُبْعَثُ	بَعَثَ
The one who is sending	Sending	He is sending	He/it sent/dispatched
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَبْعُوثٌ	بَعَثًا	يُْبْعَثُ	بُعِثَ
The one who is being sent	Sending	He is being sent	He was sent
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِْبْعَثٍ	مَبْعَثٍ	لَا تَبْعَثُ	إِبْعَثْ

مِبْعَاتُ مِبْعَتُهُ	مَبْعِثُ مَبْعَتُهُ		
Tool for sending	Time and Place of sending	You (Male) don't send!	You (Male) send!

فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعَلُ	فَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ	مَفْعَلٌ	لا تَفْعَلْ	إِفْعَلْ
مِفْعَالٌ	مَفْعِلٌ		
مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلَةٌ		

Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Kasra on the 2nd Root Letter (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Fatah on 2nd Root Letter (3rd Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have م at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2nd Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 4 – Using ح ف ظ

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
حَافِظٌ	حِفْظًا	يَحْفَظُ	حَفِظَ
The one who is guarding	Guarding	He is guarding	He/it guarded
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَحْفُوظٌ	حِفْظًا	يُحْفَظُ	حُفِظَ

The one who is being guarded	Guarding	He is being guarded	He was guarded
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِحْفَظٌ مِحْفَظٌ مِحْفَظَةٌ	مَحْفَظٌ مَحْفَظٌ مَحْفَظَةٌ	لا تَحْفَظْ	إِحْفَظْ
Tool for guarding	Time and Place of guarding	You (Male) don't guard!	You (Male) guard!

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 5

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l

فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعِلُ	فُعِلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلٌ مَفْعِلٌ مَفْعَلَةٌ	لا تَفْعِلُ	اِفْعِلْ

Characteristics

Past Tense Form - Has Kasra on the 2nd Root Letter (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Fatah on 2nd Root Letter (3rd Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have م at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Mafool – the م at the start takes a Fatah (unlike Big Families which takes a Dhamma) and the 2nd Root Letter has a Dhamma on it with a و attached to it (Black highlight)

Ism Alatun – the م at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Example of Sub Family 5 – Using ح س ب

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
حَاسِبٌ	حِسَابًا	يَحْسِبُ	حَسِبَ
The one who is assuming	Assuming	He is assuming	He assumed

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَحْسُوبٌ	حِسَابًا	يُحْسَبُ	حُسِبَ
The thing that is being assumed	Assuming	It is being assumed	It was assumed
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِحْسَبٌ مِحْسَابٌ مِحْسَبَةٌ	مَحْسَبٌ مَحْسِبٌ مَحْسَبَةٌ	لَا تَحْسِبْ	إِحْسِبْ
Tool for assuming	Time and Place of assuming	You (Male) don't assume!	You (Male) assume!

فَعْلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 6

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَعِيلٌ	N/A	يَفْعُلُ	فَعَّلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلٌ مَفْعِلٌ مَفْعَلَةٌ	لا تَفْعُلْ	أَفْعُلْ

Characteristics

This Sub Family is Lazim – has no Passive Forms (does not take a Mafool Beehee)

Past Tense Form - Has Dhamma on the 2nd Root Letter (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Form - Has Dhamma on 2nd Root Letter (3rd Root Letter will always have Dhamma in normal form) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il – has **ي** connected to the 2nd Root Letter – the Ism Siffa replaces the Ism Far'il in this case (Green highlight) and has a Fatah – Kasra sequence (Dark blue highlight) and does not have **م** at the start (like the Big Families) – only 3 Root letters are used

Ism Alatun – the **م** at the start takes a Kasra (Purple highlight)

Example of Sub Family 6 – Using **ض ع ف**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
ضَعِيفٌ	ضُعْفًا	يَضْعُفُ	ضَعُفَ
The one who is weak	Weakness	He is weak	He was weak

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِضْعَفٌ مِضْعَافٌ مِضْعَفَةٌ	مَضْعَفٌ مَضْعِيفٌ مَضْعَفَةٌ	لا تَضْعُفْ	أَضْعُفْ
Tool for becoming weak	Time and Place of becoming weak	You (Male) don't be weak!	You (Male) be weak!

Determining the Sub Family

Unless both the Past Tense Form and Present/Future Tense Form of the Fi'l are shown the Sub Family cannot be determined without looking the Fi'l up in a dictionary (Explained in the [Dictionary Chapter](#))

But some Sub Families are more common:

So between Family 4 - **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ** and Family 5 - **فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ** where the Past Tense match – Family 4 - **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ** is more common

So between Family 2 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ** and Family 5 - **فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ** where the Present Tense match – Family 2 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ** is more common

So between Family 1 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** and Family 6 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** where the Present Tense match – Family 1 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** is more common

Extra Family Parts in Small Sub Families

They take the same form across all Sub Families

Family Part	Meaning	Pattern
إِسْمُ آلَةٍ	A Tool/Device for doing the action (Ism Alatun) - Ism	مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ
إِسْمُ تَفْضِيلٍ	Comparatives/Superlatives (Ism Tafdeel) - Ism	أَفْعَلٌ
إِسْمُ صِفَةٍ	Adjectives for Permanent Qualities (Ism Siffa) - Ism	فَعِيلٌ

		فَعِلٌ
إِسْمٌ مُبَالَغَةٌ	A Magnified version of the Doer (the Ism Far'il) - Ism	فَعَّالٌ فَعْلَانُ فَعُولٌ فَعَّيْلٌ فُعُولٌ

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

المَزِيدُ فِيهِ - Big Families

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ - Family 2

Known as - بَابُ تَفْعِيلٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعِّلٌ	تَفْعِيلًا	يُفَعِّلُ	فَعَّلَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُفَعَّلٌ	تَفْعِيلًا	يُفَعِّلُ	فَعَّلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفَعَّلٌ	لا تَفَعِّلْ	فَعِّلْ	

Characteristics

Shadda on the 2nd Root Letter and appears in most forms (yellow highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l Form starts with a Dhamma (only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ with a Dhamma (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l Form (يُفَعِّلُ) and Ism Far'il

(مُفَعِّلٌ) – Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter ي

to م and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l Form (يُفَعَّلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُفَعَّلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter ي to م and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ِ

With Passive Present Fi'l Form – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعَّلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Some Implications of Family 2

Family 2 often indicates repetitive action over a prolong period of time

Also used to magnify action

Example of Family 2 – Using ن ز ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْزِلٌ	تَنْزِيلًا	يُنْزِلُ	نَزَلَ
The one who sends down	Sending down	He/It is being sent down	He/It sent down

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُنَزَّلٌ	تَنْزِيلًا	يُنَزَّلُ	نُزِّلَ
The thing which is sent down	Sending Down	He is being sent down	He was sent down
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنَزَّلٌ		لا تُنَزِّلْ	نَزِّلْ
Time and Place of sending down		You (Male) don't send down!	You (Male) send down!

فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ - Family 3

Known as - بَابُ مُفَاعَلَةٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعِلٌ	فِعَالًا مُفَاعَلَةً	يُفَاعِلُ	فَاعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعَلٌ	فِعَالًا مُفَاعَلَةً	يُفَاعَلُ	فُوعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفَاعَلٌ		لَا تُفَاعِلُ	فَاعِلْ

Characteristics

Has extra Alif in all but one of the forms (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l Form starts with a Dhamma (only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Blue highlight)

Family 3 has 2 Masdars – interchangeable (NOTE: Masdar are actually genderless so can be used without changing its gender)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma)
(Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يُفَاعِلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُفَاعِلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter ي to م and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - مُ instead of يُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُفَاعَلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُفَاعَلٌ) –

Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter ي to م and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - مُ instead of يُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَاعَلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Some Implications

Action directed from one person/group to another (e.g. He fought...someone)

Example of Family 3 – Using ق ت ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُقَاتِلٌ	قِتَالًا مُقَاتَلَةً	يُقَاتِلُ	قَاتَلَ
The one who fights	Fighting	He is fighting	He fought
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُقَاتَلٌ	قِتَالًا مُقَاتَلَةً	يُقَاتَلُ	قُوِيَ
The one who is fought against	Fighting	He is being fought against	He was fought
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُقَاتَلٌ	لَا تُقَاتِلْ		قَاتِلْ
Time and Place of fighting	You (Male) don't fight!		You (Male) fight!

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Known as - بَابُ إِفْعَالٍ

For memorization the ل ع ف Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعِلٌ	إِفْعَالًا	يُفْعِلُ	أَفْعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعَلٌ	إِفْعَالًا	يُفْعَلُ	أُفْعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُفْعَلٌ	لا تَفْعِلْ	أَفْعِلْ
----------	-------------	----------

Characteristics

Has Hamza أ on some of the forms (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l Form starts with a Dhamma (only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Blue highlight)

The Command form will always begin with a Fatah on the Hamza أَ (unlike all the other families which will take a Kasra or a Dhamma if an extra Alif ا is added to the start of the word)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يُفْعِلْ) and Ism Far'il (مُفْعِلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter ي to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ٌ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُفَعِّلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُفَعَّلٌ)

– Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter ي to م and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفَعِّلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Some Implications

Root letters which are inserted into Family 4 create a meaning where the action affects someone/something else (Mootadee) e.g. He honoured...someone

Can mean the action was completed immediately and at once

Example of Family 4 – Using ك ر م

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُكْرِمٌ	إِكْرَامًا	يُكْرِمُ	أَكْرَمَ

The one who honours	To honour	He is honouring	He honoured
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُكْرِمٌ	إِكْرَامًا	يُكْرِمُ	أُكْرِمَ
The one who is honoured	To honour	He is being honoured	He was honoured
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُكْرِمٌ		لا تُكْرِمُ	أَكْرِمِ
Time and Place of honouring		You (Male) don't honour!	You (Male) honour!

Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Known as - بَابُ تَفَعُّلٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّفَعِلٌ	تَفَعُّلاً	يُتَّفَعِلُ	تَفَعَّلَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّفَعِلٌ	تَفَعُّلاً	يُتَّفَعِلُ	تُفَعِّلُ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُتَّفَعِلٌ	لا تَتَّفَعِلْ		تَفَعِّلْ

Characteristics

Shadda on the 2nd Root letter in all forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra ت added to 3 Root letters in all forms (Blue highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَتَفَعَّلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُتَفَعِّلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Second last letter (the one with a Shadda - 2nd Root letter) gets a Kasra (instead of a Fatah) and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ْ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُتَفَعَّلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُتَفَعِّلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ْ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُتَفَعَّلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Some Implications

Can mean the action took effort to complete

Example of Family 5 – Using ق ب ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَقَبِّلٌ	تَقَبُّلاً	يَتَقَبَّلُ	تَقَبَّلَ
The one who accepts	To accept	He is accepting	He accepted
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَقَبَّلٌ	تَقَبُّلاً	يُتَقَبَّلُ	تُقَبِّلَ
The one who is accept	To accept	He is being accepted	He was accepted
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُتَقَبِّلٌ	لَا تَتَقَبَّلُ	تَقَبَّلَ
Time and Place of accepting	You (Male) don't accept!	You (Male) accept!

تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

Known as - بَابُ تَفَاعُلٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَاعِلٌ	تَفَاعُلًا	يَتَفَاعَلُ	تَفَاعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُتَفَاعِلٌ	تَفَاعُلًا	يُتَفَاعَلُ	تُفَاعِلْ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَفَاعِلٌ	لا تَتَفَاعَلْ	تَفَاعِلْ	

Characteristics

Has extra Alif ا in all but one forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra ت added to the 3 Root letters in all forms (Blue highlight)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَتَفَاعَلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُتَفَاعِلٌ) – Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter

يَ to مُ and the Second last letter (which is the 2nd Root letter) gets a Kasra (instead of a Fatah) and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُتَفَاعَلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُتَفَاعِلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُتَفَاعَلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Some Implications

Can mean the action took place between two groups/people

Example of Family 6 – Using ن ز ع

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَنَارِعٌ	تَنَارُعًا	يَتَنَارَعُ	تَنَارَعَ

The one who argues	To argue	He is arguing	He argued
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَنَارِعٌ	تَنَارُعًا	يُتَنَارَعُ	تُنُوزِعَ
The one who is argued with	To argue	He is being argued with	He was argued with
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَنَارِعٌ		لا تَتَنَارَعُ	تَنَارِعْ
Time and Place of arguing		You (Male) don't argue!	You (Male) argue!

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Known as - بَابُ اِنْفِعَالٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْفَعِلٌ	إِنْفِعَالًا	يَنْفَعِلُ	إِنْفَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْفَعَلٌ		لَا تَنْفَعِلُ	إِنْفَعِلْ

Characteristics

Family is Lazim – cannot be made Passive – does not take a Mafool
Beehee

Has extra ن before the 1st Root Letter in all the forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra Alif ا added in two forms (Blue highlight) (Command form not included as Alif is added as standard in most Command forms)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَنْفَعِلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُنْفَعِلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter ي to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Some Implications

This Family sounds Passive in English but is counted as Active Fi'l in Arabic (look at meanings in example below to understand this)

Example of Family 7 – Using ف ط ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l

مُنْفَطِرٌ	اِنْفِطَارًا	يَنْفَطِرُ	اِنْفَطَرَ
The one who is being split	To be split	He is being split	He was split
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْفَطِرٌ		لَا تَنْفَطِرُ	اِنْفَطِرْ
Time and Place of being split		You (Male) don't be split!	You (Male) be split!

اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ - Family 8

Known as - بَابُ اِفْتِعَالٍ

For memorization the ف ع ل Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَعِلٌ	إِفْتِعَالًا	يُفْتَعِلُ	إِفْتَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَعَلٌ	إِفْتِعَالًا	يُفْتَعَلُ	أُفْتَعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفْتَعَلٌ		لَا تُفْتَعِلُ	إِفْتَعِلْ

Characteristics

Has extra ت after 1st Root Letter in all forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra Alif ا added in some forms (Blue highlight) (Command form not included as Alif is added as standard in most Command forms)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَفْتَعِلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُفْتَعِلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُفْتَعَلُ) and Ism Mafool (

مُفْتَعَلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change

first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُفْتَعَلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

If ن and ت are seen together – Family 8 is assumed (not Family 7)

Example:

إِنْتَقَمَ – He took revenge

ت ق م - If from Family 7 – 3 Root Letters

ن ق م - If from Family 8 – 3 Root Letters

Family 8 is assumed

Some Implications

Sometimes indicates magnification of action

Example of Family 8 – Using ج ن ب

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُجْتَنِبٌ	اجْتِنَابًا	يَجْتَنِبُ	اجْتَنَبَ
The one who avoids	To avoid	He is avoiding	He avoided
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُجْتَنَبٌ	اجْتِنَابًا	يُجْتَنَبُ	اجْتُنِبَ
The one who is being avoided	To avoid	He is being avoided	He was avoided
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُجْتَنَبٌ		لا تَجْتَنِبُ	اجْتَنِبْ
Time and Place of avoiding		You (Male) don't avoid!	You (Male) avoid!

Family 9 - إِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ

Known as - بَابُ إِفْعَالٍ

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعَلٌّ	إِفْعَالًا	يَفْعَلُّ	إَفْعَلَّ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفْعَلٌّ	لا تَفْعَلْ	لا تَفْعَلْ	إَفْعَلْ
	لا تَفْعَلْ		إَفْعَلْ

	لا تَفْعَلْ	إِفْعَلْ
--	-------------	----------

Characteristics

Known as the Colour Family e.g. to turn X into a particular colour

Has Shadda on the 3rd Root Letter in most forms (Yellow highlight)

Always Lazim – cannot be made Passive – does not take a Mafool Beehee

Has 3 Commands and 3 Prohibitions Forms – they are interchangeable

For this Family only – Ism Far'il and Zharf are the Same (usually it is the Ism Mafool and Zharf that are the same)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Zharf – All begin with مُ (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يَفْعَلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُفْعَلٌ) –

Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Implications

None

Example of Family 9 – Using ص ف ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُصْفَرٌّ	إِصْفِرَارًا	يَصْفَرُّ	إِصْفَرَّ
The one who becomes yellow	To become yellow	He is turning yellow	He/it turned yellow
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُصْفَرٌّ	لا تَصْفَرَّ لا تَصْفَرَّ		إِصْفَرَّ إِصْفَرَّ

	لا تَصْفِرْ	اِصْفِرْ
Time and Place of turning yellow	You (Male) don't turn yellow!	You (Male) turn yellow!

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Known as - بَابُ اِسْتِفْعَالٍ

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفْعِلٌ	اِسْتِفْعَالًا	يَسْتَفْعِلُ	اِسْتَفْعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُسْتَفْعَلٌ	إِسْتَفْعَالًا	يُسْتَفْعَلُ	أُسْتَفْعَلْ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَفْعَلٌ		لَا تَسْتَفْعِلْ	إِسْتَفْعِلْ

Characteristics

Has extra **سْت** in all the forms (Yellow highlight)

Has extra Alif ا added in some forms (Blue highlight) (Command form not included as Alif is added as standard in most Command forms)

Present Tense Fi'l does not start with a Dhamma (that only occurs in 3 Families – 2 – 3 and 4) (Dark blue highlight)

Ism Far'il (Doer) – Ism Mafool – Zharf – All begin with **مُ** (with a Dhamma) (Black highlight)

Ism Mafool and Zharf are the Same (True for all the Big Families except for Family 9)

Clear link between Present Tense Fi'l (يُسْتَفْعَلُ) and Ism Far'il (مُسْتَفْعِلٌ) – Changing from Past Tense to Ism Far'il = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Far'il is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

Clear link between Passive Present Fi'l (يُسْتَفْعَلُ) and Ism Mafool (مُسْتَفْعَلٌ) – Changing from Passive Present Fi'l to Ism Mafool = Change first letter يَ to مُ and the Ism Mafool is an Ism so becomes heavy - ُ instead of ُ

With Passive Present Fi'l – the Harakat will always be the ones that normally sound/appear above the letter i.e. Fatah, Sukoon, Dhamma (not Kasra) e.g. يُسْتَفْعَلُ – (this is in majority of cases for Passive Present Fi'l)

Some Implications

Actions usually indicate seeking, desiring and trying to obtain something

Example of Family 10 – Using ع ج ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l

مُسْتَعَجِلٌ	إِسْتِعْجَالًا	يُسْتَعَجَلُ	إِسْتَعْجَلَ
The one who is expediting	To expedite	He is expediting	He/it expedited
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَعَجَلٌ	إِسْتِعْجَالًا	يُسْتَعَجَلُ	أُسْتُعْجِلَ
The one who is being expedited	To expedite	He is being expedited	He was expedited
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَعَجَلٌ		لَا تُسْتَعَجَلُ	إِسْتَعْجَلْ
Time and Place of expediting		You (Male) don't expedite!	You (Male) expedite!

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Irregular Verbs

3 types of Irregularities in Sarf

1. When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء – Mahmuzun مَهْمُوزٌ

2. When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same – letters combine

and take a Shadda – Moodaarefun مُضَاعَفٌ e.g. شَقَّ (Root

Letters: ش ق ق)

3. When one of two Root Letters are a Vowel (Waw و – Yah ي) –

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌ

- Alif ا is not considered a Root Letter and is replaced with one of the

other two - Waw و or Yah ي

- 1st Root Letter is و or ي – Mithalun مِثَالٌ

- 2nd Root Letter is و or ي – Ajwafun أَجَوَفٌ
- 3rd Root Letter is و or ي – Naqisun نَاقِصٌ
- 1st and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي – Lafeefun Mafrukun لَفِيفٌ

مَفْرُوقٌ

- 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي – Lafeefun Makrunun لَفِيفٌ

مَقْرُونٌ

Irregular Verbs - Mahmuzun مَهْمُوزٌ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Hazma ء treated differently when:

1. 2 Hamzas come together
2. Hazma and Alif come together

In Big Families

Hazma affects Sarf Forms when it comes with another Hamza or an Alif and only in the following families:

Family 3: فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Family 4: أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Family 8: اِفْتَعَلَ يِفْتَعِلُ

In each case if the 1st root letter is Hamza it will come with another Hamza or an Alif

Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

NOTE: for understanding purposes the 1st Root Letter **ف** is replaced with Hamza **ء**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤَاعِلٌ	ءِعَالًا مُؤَاعَلَةً	يُؤَاعِلُ	ءَاعَلَ or written as آَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤَاعَلٌ	ءِعَالًا مُؤَاعَلَةً	يُؤَاعَلُ	أُوعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُؤَاعِلٌ	لَا تُؤَاعِلْ	ءَاعِلٌ
-----------	---------------	---------

When Hazma ء and Alif ا met - creates a Madda مَدَّ

Madda written as: ءَا or آ (Yellow highlight)

Only two forms affected: Past Tense and Command (Blue highlight)

Example of Family 3 – Using ء خ ذ

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤَاخِذٌ	ءِخَاذًا مُؤَاخِذَةً	يُؤَاخِذُ	ءَاخَذَ or written as آخَذَ
The one who seizes	To seize	He is seizing	He seized
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُؤَاخَذٌ	ءِخَاذًا مُؤَاخَذَةً	يُؤَاخَذُ	أُوْخِذَ
The one who is seized	To seize	He is being seized	He was seized
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُؤَاخَذٌ		لَا تُؤَاخِذُ	ءَاخِذْ
Time and Place of seizing		You (Male) don't seize!	You (Male) be seize!

أَفْعَلْ يُفْعِلُ - Family 4

NOTE: for understanding purposes the 1st Root Letter ف is replaced with Hamza ء

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	--------------------	-----------------

مُؤْعِلٌ	إِئْعَالًا	يُؤْعِلُ	ءَاعِلَ or written as آَعِلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤْعَلٌ	إِئْعَالًا	يُؤْعَلُ	أُؤْعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُؤْعَلٌ		لَا تُؤْعِلُ	ءَاعِلْ

When Hazma ء and Alif ا met - creates a Madda مَدَّ

Madda written as: ءَا or آَا (Yellow highlight)

The Hazma ء turns into a ي in Masdar (Blue highlight)

Example of Family 4 – Using ء ث ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤَثِّرٌ	إِثَارًا	يُؤَثِّرُ	ءَاثَرَ or written as آثَرَ
The one who prefers	To prefer	He is preferring	He preferred
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤَثَّرٌ	إِثَارًا	يُؤَثَّرُ	أُؤَثِّرَ
The one who is preferred	To prefer	He is being preferred	He was preferred
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُؤَثَّرٌ		لَا تُؤَثِّرُ	ءَاثِرْ
Time and Place of preferring		You (Male) don't prefer!	You (Male) prefer!

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

NOTE: for understanding purposes the 1st Root Letter **ف** is replaced with

Hamza **ع**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَعِلٌ	إِتْعَالًا	يَتَعِلُ	إِتْعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَعَلٌ	إِتْعَالًا	يُتَعَلُ	أُتْعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُتَعَلٌ	لَا تَتَعِلُ		إِتْعِلْ

--	--	--

The Hazma ء and the ت merged to make a ت in all forms (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 8 – Using ء خ ذ

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّخِذٌ	إِتِّخَاذًا	يَتَّخِذُ	إِتَّخَذَ
The one who takes	To take	He is taking	He took
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّخَذٌ	إِتِّخَاذًا	يُتَّخَذُ	أُتِّخِذَ
The one who is	To take	He is being taken	He was taken

taken			
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَّخِذٌ		لَا تَتَّخِذْ	اتَّخِذْ
Time and Place of taking		You (Male) don't take!	You (Male) take!

Small Families

Irregularities only occur when the 1st or 2nd Root Letter is a Hazma ء

1st Root Letter is a Hamza

Ism Far'il

Hazma comes with Alif – it creates Madda written as: آ or ءا

Example

فَاعِلٌ - When 1st Root Letter ف is changed to Hamza ء it comes with Alif ا – becomes: ءَاعِلٌ or آَعِلٌ

Ism Tafdeel (Comparative/Superlative)

Hamza comes with another Hamza - it creates Madda written as: آ or ءا

Example

أَفْعُلُ - When 1st Root Letter فَ is changed to Hamza ء – two Hamzas come together to make أَعْلُ - becomes: ءَاعْلُ or آَعْلُ

Commanding Form

Hamza comes with Alif – both Hamza and Alif are dropped

Examples

3 Commanding Forms possible in Small Families:

أَفْعُلُ - When 1st Root Letter فَ is changed to Hamza ء – أَعْلُ becomes: عُلُ

إِفْعِلُ - When 1st Root Letter فَ is changed to Hamza ء – إَاعِلُ becomes: عِلُ

إِأَعْلُ - ء - When 1st Root Letter فَ is changed to Hamza ء - إِفْعَلُ
becomes: عَلُ

Example of Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using ء ك ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
ءَاكِلٌ	أَكَلًا	يَأْكُلُ	أَكَلَ
The one who is eating	To eat	He is eating	He ate
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَاأْكُولٌ	أَكَلًا	يُأْكَلُ	أُكِلَ
The thing that is eaten	To eat	It is being ate	It was eaten

Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِئْكَالٌ مِئْكَالٌ مِئْكَالَةٌ	مَاْأَكُلُ مَاْأَكِلُ مَاْأَكَلَةٌ	لَا تَأْكُلْ	كُلْ
Tool for eating	Time and Place of eating	You (Male) don't eat!	You (Male) eat!

The Present Tense أَنَا form

If the 1st Root Letter is Hamza ء then in the Present Tense أَنَا form –
Hamza will meet an Alif - it creates Madda written as: ءَا or آ

Example

1st Root Letter is Hamza ء:

3 different Present Tense Forms possible from the Small Families

يَأْعُلُ - يَأْعِلُ - يَأْعَلُ Present Tense Form: هُوَ

أَنَا Present Tense Form: آَعُلُ - آَعِلُ - آَعَلُ

(NOTE: In أنا form ي is replaced with Alif ا)

Hamza will meet an Alif - it creates Madda written as: آ or ء

2nd Root Letter is a Hamza

Commanding Form

Hamza comes with Alif – both Hamza (Yellow highlight) and Alif (Blue highlight) are dropped – the 1st Root Letter will take the Harakat of the Hamza (which was dropped)

Examples

3 Commanding Forms possible in Small Families:

أَفْعُلُ - When 2nd Root Letter ع is changed to Hamza ء - أَفْعُلُ becomes: فُلُ

إِفْأَنْ - When 2nd Root Letter ع is changed to Hamza ء - اِفْعِلْ becomes: فِلْ

إِفْأَنْ - When 2nd Root Letter ع is changed to Hamza ء - اِفْعَلْ becomes: فَلْ

Example of Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using س ء ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
سَائِلٌ	سُؤْلًا	يَسْأَلُ	سَأَلَ
The one who is asking	To ask	He is asking	He asked
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَسْئُولٌ	سُؤْلًا	يُسْأَلُ	سُئِلَ

The one that is asked	To ask	He is being asked	He was asked
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِسْأَلٌ مِشْأَالٌ مِشْأَلَةٌ	مَسْأَلٌ مَسْئِلٌ مَسْأَلَةٌ	لَا تَسْأَلْ	سَلْ
Tool for asking	Time and Place of asking	You (Male) don't ask!	You (Male) ask!

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Mithalun مِثَالٌ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - when one of the Root Letters is و or ي

Mithalun مِثَالٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

When 1st Root Letter is و or ي

1st Root Letter is و - مِثَالٌ و

1st Root Letter is ي - مِثَالٌ ي

Small Families

1st Root Letter is و

مِثَالٌ و

Rules always followed:

1. Present Tense Form – و is dropped (therefore does not show in

Command Form)

2. When ؤ “ew” sound is created the و is replaced with ي

3. Two Masdars formed – one does not follow a pattern – the other

follows the pattern: وَعِلَّةٌ – (where و is the 1st Root Letter - the ع

is the 2nd Root Letter - the ل is the 3rd Root Letter)

Example using Sub Family 2: فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using و ز ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
وَازِرٌ	وِزْرًا وَزِيرَةً	يَزِرُ	وَزَرَ

The one who is carrying	To carry	He is carrying	He carried
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَوْزُورٌ	وِزْرًا وَزِيرَةً	يُوزَرُ	وُزِرَ
The thing that is carried	To carry	It is being carried	It was carried
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِيزَرٌ مِيزَارٌ مِيزَرَةٌ	مَوْزَرٌ مَوْزِرٌ مَوْزَرَةٌ	لَا تَزِرْ	زِرْ
Tool for carrying	Time and Place of carrying	You (Male) don't carry!	You (Male) carry!

Present Tense Form - و is dropped: يُوزِرُ becomes يَزِرُ

Second Masdar formed which follows pattern وَزَرَةً: وَزَرَةٌ

Passive Present Tense – a وُ is added: يُوزَرُ

Command Form affected because of change to Present Tense Form (يَزِرُ):

زِرْ

In Ism Alatun و is replaced with ي to avoid وَ “ew” sound: مِيزَرُ

مِيزَرَةٌ - مِيزَارُ -

1st Root Letter is ي

مِثَالُ ي

In Small Families displays no irregularities

Only note that when وَ “ew” sound is created the و is replaced with ي

Example using Sub Family 4: فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ي ء س

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
يَائِسٌ	يَأْسًا	يَيْأَسُ	يَيْسَ
The one who is despairing	To despair	He is despairing	He despaired
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَيُّوْسٌ	يَأْسًا	يُؤَسُّ	يُيْسَ
The thing that is despaired	To despair	It is being despaired	It was despaired of
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِيَّاسٌ مِيَّاسٌ مِيَّاسَةٌ	مَيَّاسٌ مَيِّسٌ مَيَّاسَةٌ	لا تَيَّاسُ	إِيَّاسُ

Tool for despairing	Time and Place of despairing	You (Male) don't despair!	You (Male) despair!

Big Families

Rules apply for both مِثَالُ ي and مِثَالُ و

1. When ؤ "ew" sound is created the و is replaced with ي and ي is

replaced with و to avoid يي sound (only occurs in Families 4 أَفْعَلَ

and 10 اسْتَفْعَلَ)

2. Vowel merges with ت in Family 8 اِفْتَعَلَ - creates a تَّ

Otherwise the Vowels و and ي behave normally

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

1st Root Letter is replaced with و

In Masdar و is replaced with ي to avoid هُوَ “ew” sound: اِوْعَالًا
becomes اِيْعَالًا

Example of Family 4 – Using و ل ج

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤَلِّجٌ	إِيْلَاجًا	يُؤَلِّجُ	أَوَّلَجَ
The one who makes it enter	To make enter	He is making it enter	He made it enter
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤَلِّجٌ	إِيْلَاجًا	يُؤَلِّجُ	أُوِّلِجَ
The thing which is entered	To make enter	It is being entered into	It was made to enter

Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُولِجٌ	لا تُولِجْ	أُولِجْ
Time and Place of making it enter	You (Male) don't make it enter!	You (Male) make it enter!

In Masdar و is replaced with ي to avoid ؤ “ew” sound: **إُولَاجًا**
 becomes **إِيْلَاجًا**

Family 4 أَفْعَلَ

1st Root Letter is replaced with ي

ي is replaced with و to avoid يي sound:

Examples include:

Present Tense يُنْعِلُ becomes يُوْعِلُ

Ism Far'il مُنْعِلٌ becomes مُوْعِلٌ

Passive Past Tense أُنْعِلَ becomes أُوْعِلَ

Example of Family 4 – Using ي ق ن

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُوقِنٌ	إِيقَانًا	يُوقِنُ	أَيَّقَنَ
The one who is certain	To be certain	He is certain	He was certain
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُوقِنٌ	إِيقَانًا	يُوقِنُ	أُوقِنَ
The thing which is made certain	To be certain	It is being made certain	It was made certain
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُوقِنٌ		لَا تُوقِنُ	أَيِّقِنُ

Time and Place of being certain	You (Male) don't be certain!	You (Male) be certain!
---------------------------------	------------------------------	------------------------

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

1st Root Letter is replaced with ي or و

Vowel merges with ت - creates a تَّ – which appears in all Forms

Example forms:

Past Tense – اِوْتَعَلَ or اِيْتَعَلَ becomes - اِتَّعَلَ

Present Tense – يُوْتَعِلُ or يِيْتَعِلُ becomes يِتَّعِلُ

Command Form – اِوْتَعِلْ or اِيْتَعِلْ becomes اِتَّعِلْ

Normally one vowel would replace the other to produce a better sound but in both cases unacceptable sounds are created so the vowel and ت (in Family 8) merge to create تَّ

Example of Family 8 – Using و ح د

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّحِدٌ	اِتِّحَادًا	يَتَّحِدُ	اِتَّحَدَ
The one who is uniting	To unite	He is uniting	He united
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّحَدٌ	اِتِّحَادًا	يُتَّحَدُ	اُتِّحِدَ
The one who is united	To unite	He is being united	He was united
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَّحَدٌ		لَا تَتَّحِدُ	اِتَّحِدْ
Time and Place of uniting		You (Male) don't unite!	You (Male) unite!

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

1st Root Letter is replaced with و

In Masdar و is replaced with ي to avoid وَ “ew” sound: اِسْتَوْعَلَ
becomes اِسْتَيْعَلَ

Example of Family 10 – Using و ق د

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَوْقِدٌ	اِسْتَيْقَادًا	يَسْتَوْقِدُ	اِسْتَوْقَدَ
The one who is lighting a fire	To light a fire	He is lighting a fire	He lit a fire
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَوْقَدٌ	اِسْتَيْقَادًا	يُسْتَوْقَدُ	اُسْتُوقِدَ

The thing that is lit	To light a fire	It is being lit	It was lit
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَوْقَدٌ		لَا تَسْتَوْقِدْ	اِسْتَوْقِدْ
Time and Place of lighting a fire		You (Male) don't light a fire!	You (Male) light a fire!

Family 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ

1st Root Letter is replaced with ي

In Passive Past Tense ي is replaced with و to avoid يي sound: اُسْتُعِلَ becomes اُسْتُوعِلَ

Example of Family 10 – Using ي ق ن

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَيْقِنٌ	إِسْتَيْقَانًا	يَسْتَيْقِنُ	إِسْتَيْقَنَ
The one who is certain	To be certain	He is certain	He was certain
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَيْقِنٌ	إِسْتَيْقَانًا	يُسْتَيْقِنُ	أُسْتُوقِنَ
The thing that is certain	To be certain	It is certain	It was certain
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَيْقِنٌ		لَا تَسْتَيْقِنُ	إِسْتَيْقِنُ
Time and Place of being certain		You (Male) don't be certain!	You (Male) be certain!

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Ajwafun أَجَوَفٌ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - one of the Root Letters is و or ي

Ajwafun أَجَوَفٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

When 2nd Root Letter is و or ي

When 2nd Root Letter is و - أَجَوَفٌ و

When 2nd Root Letter is ي - أَجَوَفٌ ي

Big Families

Vowel causes changes only in Families:

Families - 4 أَفْعَلَ - 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ - both behave in the same way

Families - 7 اِنْفَعَلَ - 8 اِفْتَعَلَ - both behave in the same way

Families - 4 أَفْعَلُ يُفْعِلُ and 10 اِسْتَفْعَلُ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

Rules:

1. Past Tense – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا
2. Present Tense – Vowel replaced with Yah ي
3. Masdar – Taa ت added to it
4. If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including –
Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed

Example for Family 4 أَفْعَلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعِلٌ	إِفْعَالَةٌ	يُفْعِلُ	أَفْعَلَا

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَالٌ	إِفَالَةٌ	يُفَالُ	أُفِيلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form	
مُفَالٌ	لَا تُفِلْ	أَفِلْ	

Past Tense – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense – Vowel replaced with Yah ي (Blue highlight)

Masdar – Taa ت added to it (Black highlight)

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed (Dark blue highlight)

Example for Family 4 أَفْعَلَ using ر و د

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	---------------	-----------------

		Fi'l	
مُرِيدٌ	إِرَادَةٌ	يُرِيدُ	أَرَادَ
The one who is intending	To intend	He intends	He intended
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُرَادٌ	إِرَادَةٌ	يُرَادُ	أُرِيدَ
The thing which is intended	To intend	It is being intended	It was intended
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُرَادٌ		لَا تُرِيدُ	أَرِدْ
Time and Place of intending		You (Male) don't intend!	You (Male) intend!

Example for Family 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفِئٌ	اِسْتِفَالَةٌ	يُسْتَفِئُ	اِسْتَفَأَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفَالٌ	اِسْتِفَالَةٌ	يُسْتَفَالُ	اُسْتُفِئَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَفَالٌ		لَا تُسْتَفِئُ	اِسْتَفِئْ

Past Tense – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense – Vowel replaced with Yah ي (Blue highlight)

Masdar – Taa ت added to it (Black highlight)

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed (Dark blue highlight)

Example for Family 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ using ج و ب

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَجِيبٌ	اِسْتِجَابَةٌ	يَسْتَجِيبُ	اِسْتَجَابَ
The one who is responding	To respond	He is responding	He responded
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُسْتَجَابٌ	إِسْتِجَابَةً	يُسْتَجَابُ	أُسْتُجِيبَ
The one who is responded to	To respond	He is being responded to	He was responded to
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَجَابٌ		لَا تَسْتَجِبْ	إِسْتَجِبْ
Time and Place of responding		You (Male) don't respond!	You (Male) respond!

Families - 7 **إِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ** and 8 **إِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ**

Rules:

1. Past and Present Forms – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا
2. Masdar – Vowel is replaced with Yah ي

3. If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including -
Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed

Example for Family 7 **إِنْفَعَلَ**

Lazim Family – has no Passive Forms

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْفَالٌ	إِنْفِيلاً	يَنْفَالُ	إِنْفَالٌ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُنْفَالٌ	لَا تَنْفَلُ		إِنْفَلُ

--	--	--

Past and Present Forms – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا (Yellow highlight)

Masdar – Vowel is replaced with Yah ي (Blue highlight)

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed (Black highlight)

Example for Family 7 اِسْتَفْعَلَ using ه و ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْهَارٌ	اِنْهِيَارًا	يَنْهَارُ	اِنْهَارَ
The one who is being demolished	To demolish	He is being demolished	He was demolished
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْهَارٌ		لَا تَنْهَرْ	إِنْهَرْ
Time and Place of being demolished		You (Male) don't be demolished!	You (Male) be demolished!

Example for Family 8 إِفْتَعَلَ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَالٌ	إِفْتِيَالٌ	يَفْتَالُ	إِفْتَالَ

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَالٌ	إِفْتِيَالٌ	يُفْتَالُ	أُفْتِيلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form	
مُفْتَالٌ	لَا تَفْتَلُ	إِفْتَلْ	

Past and Present Forms – Vowel is replaced with Alif ا (Yellow highlight)

Masdar – Vowel is replaced with Yah ي (Blue highlight)

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed (Black highlight)

Ism Far'il – Ism Mafool and Zharf – are the same – context/meaning differentiates between the three

Example for Family 8 اِسْتَفْعَلَ using خ ي ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُخْتَارٌ	إِخْتِيَارًا	يَخْتَارُ	إِخْتَارَ
The one who is choosing	To choose	He is choosing	He choose
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُخْتَارٌ	إِخْتِيَارًا	يُخْتَارُ	أُخْتِيرَ
The one who is chosen	To choose	He is being chosen	He was chosen
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُخْتَارٌ	لا تَخْتَرُ		إِخْتَرْ
Time and Place of choosing	You (Male) don't		You (Male)

	choose!	choose!
--	---------	---------

Small Families

Ajwafun أَجَوْفٌ only occurs in 3 Sub Families:

In Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

In Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

In Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ

General Rules

Applies to all Sub Families

If Fi'l in Lightest Form and has Dhamma at end including - Commanding and Forbidding Forms – Vowel is removed

Past Tense follows pattern: فَالَ

Passive Past follows pattern: فِئِلَ

Passive Present follows pattern: يُفَالُ

Ism Far'il follows pattern: فَائِلٌ

Ism Mafool follows pattern:

- When 2nd Root Letter is و - مَفُوءٌ
- When 2nd Root Letter is ي - مَفِيْلٌ

Zharf follows pattern:

- When 2nd Root Letter is و - مَفَالٌ
- When 2nd Root Letter is ي - مَفِيْلٌ
- In both - مَفَالَةٌ

Ism Alatun follows pattern:

- When 2nd Root Letter is و - مِفُوءَالٌ
- When 2nd Root Letter is ي - مِفِيَالٌ

Family Specific Rules

Past and Present Tense Forms:

In Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Past Tense follows pattern: فَالَ

Present Tense follows pattern: يَفْعُولُ

In Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Past Tense follows pattern: فَالَ

Present Tense follows pattern: يَفْعِيلُ

In Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

Past Tense follows pattern: فَالَ

Present Tense follows pattern: يَفْعَالُ

Command Form

In Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Command Form follows pattern: فُلْ (Present Tense form: يَفْعُولُ – وَ is dropped for ease of speech)

In Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Command Form follows pattern: فِلْ (Present Tense form: يَفْعُلُ - ي is dropped for ease of speech)

In Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

Command Form follows pattern: فَلْ (Present Tense form: يَفْعَلُ - ا is dropped for ease of speech)

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَائِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعُولُ	فَالَ

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفُوءٌ	N/A	يُفَالُ	فِيلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
2 nd Root Letter is و مِفُوءَالُ 2 nd Root Letter is ي مِفِيَالُ	2 nd Root Letter is و مَفَالُ 2 nd Root Letter is ي مَفِيلُ In both مَفَالَةٌ	لا تَفُلْ	فُلْ

Present Tense and Ism Mafool are similar – Present يَفُوءُ – change يَ for مَ and make Ism heavy: Ism Mafool: مَفُوءٌ

Example using Sub Family 1: ذوق Using فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
ذَائِقٌ	ذُوقًا	يَذُوقُ	ذَاقَ
The one who is tasting	To taste	He is tasting	He tasted
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَذُوقٌ	ذُوقًا	يُذَاقُ	ذِيقَ
The thing that is tasted	To taste	It is being tasting	It was tasted
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِذْوَاقٌ	مَذَاقٌ	لَا تَذُقْ	ذُقْ

	مَذَاقَةٌ		
Tool for tasting	Time and Place of tasting	You (Male) don't taste!	You (Male) taste!

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَائِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعُلُ	فَالَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفَالُ	فِيلَ

Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
2 nd Root Letter is و مِفْوَالٌ	2 nd Root Letter is و مَفَالٌ	لا تَفِلْ	فِلْ
2 nd Root Letter is ي مِفْيَالٌ	2 nd Root Letter is ي مَفْيَلٌ In both مَفَالَةٌ		

Present Tense and Ism Mafool are similar – Present يَفِيْلُ – change يَ for مَ and make Ism heavy: Ism Mafool: مَفْيَلٌ

Example using Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ - Using ب ي ع

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense Fi'l
--------------------	--------	---------------	-----------------

		Fi'l	
بَائِعٌ	بَيْعًا	يَبِيعُ	بَاعَ
The one who is selling	To sell	He is selling	He sold
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَبِيعٌ	بَيْعًا	يُبَاعُ	بِيعَ
The thing that is sold	To sell	It is being sold	It was sold
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مَبِيعٌ	مَبِيعٌ مَبَاعَةٌ	لَا تَبِعْ	بِعْ
Tool for selling	Time and Place	You (Male) don't	You (Male) sell!

	of selling	sell!	
--	------------	-------	--

Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يُفَعَّلُ	فَعَّلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفَعَّلُ	فُعِّلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
2 nd Root Letter is	2 nd Root Letter is	لَا تَفْعَلْ	فَعْلْ

و	و		
مِفْوَالٌ	مَفَالٌ		
2 nd Root Letter is	2 nd Root Letter is		
ي	ي		
مِفْيَالٌ	مَفْيَالٌ		
	In both		
	مَفَالَةٌ		

Example using Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ - Using ن ي ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
نَائِلٌ	نَيْلًا	يَنَالُ	نَالَ
The one who is obtaining	To obtain	He is obtaining	He obtained
Ism Mafool (the	Masdar	Passive Present	Passive Past

thing acted on)		Tense Fi'l	Tense Fi'l
مَنْيِلٌ	نَيْلًا	يُنَالُ	نِيلَ
The thing that is obtained	To obtain	It is being obtained	It was obtained
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِنْيَالٌ	مَنْيِلٌ مَنَالَةٌ	لَا تَنْلُ	نَلْ
Tool for obtaining	Time and Place of obtaining	You (Male) don't obtain!	You (Male) obtain!

Other Changes in Sub Families

Past Tense

هُنَّ onwards – Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat – if it is from

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ – Harakat is Dhamma

All other Sub Families – Harakat is Kasra

Sub Family 1 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ فَالُوا	هُمَا فَالَا	هُوَ فَالَ	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ فُلْنَ	هُمَا فَالَتَا	هِيَ فَالَتْ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ فُلْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا فُلْتُمَا	أَنْتَ فُلْتَ	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتِ فُلْتِ	أَنْتُمَا فُلْتُمَا	أَنْتِ فُلْتِ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ فُلْنَا		أَنَا فُلْتُ	Both

هُنَّ onwards – Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat – if it is from Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ – Harakat is Dhamma (Yellow highlight)

ذوق using فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Example for Past Tense Sub Family 1

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُم ذَاقُوا They tasted	هُمَا ذَاقَا Both of them tasted (Men)	هُوَ ذَاقَ He tasted	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ ذُقْنَ They tasted (Women)	هُمَا ذَاقَتَا Both of them tasted (Women)	هِيَ ذَاقَتْ She Tasted	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ ذُقْتُمْ All of You Tasted	أَنْتُمَا ذُقْتُمَا Both of you Tasted (Men)	أَنْتَ ذُقْتَ You Tasted (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِ ذُقْتِ All of You Tasted (Women)	أَنْتُمَا ذُقْتُمَا Both of you Tasted (Women)	أَنْتِ ذُقْتِ You Tasted (Woman)	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ ذُقْنَا We Tasted	أَنَا ذُقْتُ I Tasted	Both
--------------	--	-------------------------------------	------

Sub Family 2 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ فَالُوا	هُمَا فَالَا	هُوَ فَالَ	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ فِلْنِ	هُمَا فَالَتَا	هِيَ فَالَتْ	Feminine

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ فِلْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا فِلْتُمَا	أَنْتَ فِلْتَ	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِ فِلْتِنِ	أَنْتُمَا فِلْتُمَا	أَنْتِ فِلْتِ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ فِلْنَا		أَنَا فِلْتُ	Both

هُنَّ onwards – Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat – if it is from

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ – Harakat is Dhamma

All other Sub Families – Harakat is Kasra (Yellow highlight)

Example for Past Tense Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ using ب ي ع

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُم بَاعُوا They sold	هُمَا بَاعَا Both of them sold (Men)	هُوَ بَاعَ He sold	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ بِعْنَ They sold (Women)	هُمَا بَاعَتَا Both of them sold (Women)	هِيَ بَاعَتْ She sold	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ بِعْتُمْ All of You sold	أَنْتُمَا بِعْتُمَا Both of you sold (Men)	أَنْتَ بِعْتَ You sold (Man)	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	Feminine
	بِعْتُنَّ	بِعْتُمَا	بِعْتِ	
	All of You sold (Women)	Both of you sold (Women)	You sold (Woman)	
First Person	نَحْنُ		أَنَا	Both
	بِعْنَا		بِعْتُ	
	We sold		I sold	

فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4 – Past Tense Chart

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُم فَالُوا	هُمَا فَالَا	هُوَ فَالَ	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ فِلْنِ	هُمَا فَالَتَا	هِيَ فَالَتْ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ فِلْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا فِلْتُمَا	أَنْتَ فِلْتَ	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِنِ فِلْتِنِ	أَنْتُمَا فِلْتُمَا	أَنْتِ فِلْتِ	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ فِلْنَا	أَنَا فِلْتُ	Both
--------------	-------------------	-----------------	------

هُنَّ onwards – Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat – if it is from
Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ – Harakat is Dhamma

All other Sub Families – Harakat is Kasra (Yellow highlight)

Example for Past Tense Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ن ي ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ نَالُوا They obtained	هُمَا نَالَا Both of them obtained (Men)	هُوَ نَالَ He obtained	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ نِلْنِ They obtained (Women)	هُمَا نَالَتَا Both of them obtained (Women)	هِيَ نَالَتْ She obtained	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ نِلْتُمْ All of You obtained	أَنْتُمَا نِلْتُمَا Both of you obtained (Men)	أَنْتَ نِلْتَ You obtained (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ نِلْتُنَّ All of You obtained (Women)	أَنْتُمَا نِلْتُمَا Both of you obtained (Women)	أَنْتِ نِلْتِ You obtained (Woman)	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نِلْنَا We obtained		أَنَا نِلْتُ I obtained	Both

Present Tense

هُنَّ and أَنْتِ versions only - Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat

Harakat is same as the Vowel which is removed from the هُوَ version:

If و is removed (يَفُولُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Dhamma

If ي is removed (يَفِيلُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Kasra

If ا is removed (يَفَالُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Fatah

Sub Family 1 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُمْ يَقُولُونَ	هُمَا يَقُولَانِ	هُوَ يَقُولُ	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يَقُلْنَ	هُمَا تَقُولَانِ	هِيَ تَقُولُ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَقُولُونَ	أَنْتُمَا تَقُولَانِ	أَنْتَ تَقُولُ	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِ تَقُلْنَ	أَنْتُمَا تَقُولَانِ	أَنْتِ تَقُولِينَ	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ نَقُولُ	أَنَا أَقُولُ	Both
--------------	-------------------	------------------	------

هُنَّ and أَنْتِ versions only - Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat

Harakat is same as the Vowel which is removed from the هُوَ version:

If و is removed (يَقُولُ — هُوَ) the Harakat is Dhamma (Blue highlight)

Example for Present Tense Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ using ذوق

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَذُوقُونَ They are tasting	هُمَا يَذُوقَانِ Both of them are tasting (Men)	هُوَ يَذُوقُ He tastes	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ يَذُقْنَ They are tasting (Women)	هُمَا تَذُوقَانِ Both of them are tasting (Women)	هِيَ تَذُوقُ She tastes	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَذُوقُونَ All of You are tasting	أَنْتُمَا تَذُوقَانِ Both of you are tasting (Men)	أَنْتَ تَذُوقُ You taste (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِ تَذُقْنَ All of You are tasting (Women)	أَنْتُمَا تَذُوقَانِ Both of you are tasting (Women)	أَنْتِ تَذُوقِينَ You taste (Woman)	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَذُوقُ We are tasing		أَنَا أَذُوقُ I am tasing	Both

Sub Family 2 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَفْعِلُونَ	هُمَا يَفْعِلَانِ	هُوَ يَفْعِلُ	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يَفْعِلْنَ	هُمَا تَفْعِلَانِ	هِيَ تَفْعِلُ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعِلُونَ	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعِلَانِ	أَنْتَ تَفْعِلُ	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتِ تَفْلِنِ	أَنْتُمَا تَفِيلَانِ	أَنْتِ تَفِيلَيْنِ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَفِيلُ		أَنَا أَفِيلُ	Both

أَنْتِ and أَنْتُمْ versions only - Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat

Harakat is same as the Vowel which is removed from the هُوَ version:

If ي is removed (يَفِيلُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Kasra (Blue highlight)

Example for Present Tense Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ using ب ي ع

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُم يَبِيعُونَ They are selling	هُمَا يَبِيعَانِ Both of them are selling (Men)	هُوَ يَبِيعُ He is selling	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ يَبِيعْنَ They are selling (Women)	هُمَا تَبِيعَانِ Both of them are selling (Women)	هِيَ تَبِيعُ She is selling	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَبِيعُونَ All of You are selling	أَنْتُمَا تَبِيعَانِ Both of you are selling (Men)	أَنْتَ تَبِيعُ You are selling (Man)	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَبِيعُنَّ All of You are selling (Women)	أَنْتُمَا تَبِيعَانِ Both of you are selling (Women)	أَنْتِ تَبِيعِينَ You are selling (Woman)	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَبِيعُ We are selling		أَنَا أَبِيعُ I am selling	Both

Sub Family 4 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُم يَقَالُونَ	هُمَا يَقَالَانِ	هُوَ يَقَالُ	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يَقَلْنَ	هُمَا تَقَالَانِ	هِيَ تَقَالُ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَقَالُونَ	أَنْتُمَا تَقَالَانِ	أَنْتَ تَقَالُ	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِ تَقَلْنَ	أَنْتُمَا تَقَالَانِ	أَنْتِ تَقَالَيْنِ	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ نَقَالُ	أَنَا أَقَالُ	Both
--------------	-------------------	------------------	------

هُنَّ and أَنْتُنَّ versions only - Vowel is dropped and replaced by a Harakat

Harakat is same as the Vowel which is removed from the هُوَ version:

If ا is removed (يَفَالُ – هُوَ) the Harakat is Fatah (Blue highlight)

Example for Present Tense Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ using ن ي ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَنَالُونَ They are obtaining	هُمَا يَنَالَانِ Both of them are	هُوَ يَنَالُ He is obtaining	Masculine

		obtaining (Men)		
Third Person	هُنَّ يَنْلُنَ They are obtaining (Women)	هُمَا تَنَالَانِ Both of them are obtaining (Women)	هِيَ تَنَالُ She is obtaining	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَنَالُونَ All of You are obtaining	أَنْتُمَا تَنَالَانِ Both of you are obtaining (Men)	أَنْتَ تَنَالُ You are obtaining (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَنْلَنَّ All of You are obtaining (Women)	أَنْتُمَا تَنَالَانِ Both of you are obtaining	أَنْتِ تَنَالَيْنِ You are obtaining (Woman)	Feminine

		(Women)		
First Person	نَحْنُ نَنَالُ We are obtaining	أَنَا أَنَالُ I am obtaining	Both	

Ism Tafdeel (Comparative/Superlative)

Vowel behaves normally

If its أَجُوفٌ و – Vowel appears as و

If its أَجُوفٌ ي – Vowel appears as ي

Examples

Root Letters: أَفُولُ = ف و ل

Root Letters: أَفْعِلُ = ف ي ل

Ism Siffa (Adjectives for Permanent Qualities)

Normally follows pattern: فَعِيلٌ

When the ي in فَعِيلٌ meets another vowel (و or ي) the two merge and the ي takes a Shadda and a Kasra (from the original 2nd Root Letter which was replaced with a vowel – فَوَيْلٌ - فَيَّيْلٌ)

Examples

Root Letters: فَوَيْلٌ = ف و ل becomes فَيِّلٌ

Root Letters: فَيَّيْلٌ = ف ي ل becomes فَيِّلٌ

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Naqisun نَاقِصٌ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ – when one of the Root Letters is و or ي

Naqisun نَاقِصٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

When 3rd Root Letter is و or ي

When 3rd Root Letter is و - نَاقِصٌ و

When 3rd Root Letter is ي - نَاقِصٌ ي

All Families and Forms affected

Big Families

Both نَاقِصٌ و and نَاقِصٌ ي behave in the same way

General Rules

1. Past Tense ends in Alif Maksura ي
2. Present Tense ends in a Yah ي – except Family 5 تَفَعَّلَ and Family 6 تَفَاعَلَ – they end with Alif Maksura ي
3. Ism Far'il ends with Kasratin - ِ
4. Ism Mafool ends with Fatahtain - يَّ

Family Specific Rules

The Masdar in each case follows a different pattern:

1. Families: 3 فَاعَلَ 4 أَفْعَلَ 7 اِنْفَعَلَ 8 اِفْتَعَلَ 10 اِسْتَفْعَلَ –

Masdar ends with اء

2. Family 2 فَعَّلَ and Second Masdar in Family 3 فَاعَلَ - Masdar

ends in ة

3. Families: 5 تَفَعَّلَ and 6 تَفَاعَلَ ends with Fatahtain – يَّ

Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعِّلٌ	تَفْعِيلٌ	يُفَعِّلُ	فَعَّلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعَّلٌ	تَفْعِيلٌ	يُفَعَّلُ	فُعِّلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفَعِّلٌ	لَا تُفَعِّلُ		فَعِّلْ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُزَكِّي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 2 - **فَعَّلَ** - Using **ز ك ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُزَكِّ	تَزْكِيَّةٌ	يُزَكِّي	زَكَّى
The one who is purifying	To purify	He/It is being purified	He/It purified
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُزَكَّى	تَزْكِيَّةٌ	يُزَكَّى	زُكِّيَ
The thing which is purified	To purify	He is being purified	He was purified
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُزَكِّيٌّ	لَا تُزَكِّ	زَكِّ
Time and Place of purifying	You (Male) don't purify!	You (Male) purify!

فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ - Family 3

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعٍ	فِعَاءٌ مُفَاعَاةٌ	يُفَاعِلُ	فَاعَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُفَاعِيَّ	فِعَاءٌ مُفَاعَاةً	يُفَاعِي	فُؤَعِي
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفَاعِيَّ		لَا تُفَاعِ	فَاعِ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form يُ has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 3 - فَاعَلَ - Using ل ق ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُلَاقٍ	لِقَاءٌ	يُلَاقِي	لَاقَى

	مُلاَقَاةً		
The one who is meeting	To meet	He is meeting	He met
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُلَاقٍ	لِقَاءٍ مُلاَقَاةً	يُلَاقِي	لُوقِيَ
The one/thing which is met	To meet	He is being met	He was met
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُلَاقٍ		لَا تُلَاقِ	لَاقِ
Time and Place of meeting		You (Male) don't meet!	You (Male) meet!

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعِلٌ	إِفْعَاءٌ	يُفْعِلُ	أَفْعَلَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعَلٌ	إِفْعَاءٌ	يُفْعَلُ	أُفْعِلَى
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفْعَلٌ	لَا تُفْعِلُ		أَفْعِلْ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is

dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 4 - **أَفْعَلَ** - Using **ن ج و**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنَجِّ	إِنِّجَاءً	يُنَجِّي	أَنَجَّى
The one who is saving	To save	He is saving	He saved
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُنَجَّى	إِنِّجَاءً	يُنَجَّى	أُنَجِّي
The one who is saved	To save	He is being saved	He was saved
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُنَجَّى	لَا تُنَجِّ	أَنْجِ
Time and Place of saving	You (Male) don't save!	You (Male) save!

Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَعِّلٌ	تَفَعُّلاً	يَتَفَعَّلُ	تَفَعَّلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَعِّلٌ	تَفَعُّلاً	يُتَفَعَّلُ	تُفَعِّلُ

Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَفَعِّى	لا تَتَفَعَّ	تَفَعَّ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ى** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ - Using م ن ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَمَنَّ	تَمَنَّى	يَتَمَنَّى	تَمَنَّى
The one who is wishing	To wish	He is wishing	He wished
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُتَمَنِّئٌ	تَمَنِّيًّا	يُتَمَنَّى	تُمْنِي
The thing which is wished for	To wish	It is being wished for	It was wished
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَمَنِّئٌ		لَا تَتَمَنَّ	تَمَنَّ
Time and Place of wishing		You (Male) don't wish!	You (Male) wish!

تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَاعِلٌ	تَفَاعِيلًا	يَتَفَاعَلُ	تَفَاعَلَ

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّفَاعِيَّ	تَفَاعِيًا	يُتَّفَاعَى	تُفُوْعِيَّ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَّفَاعِيَّ		لا تَتَّفَاعَ	تَفَاعَ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ - Using ج ف و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَجَافِيَّ	تَجَافِيًا	يَتَجَافَى	تَجَافَى

The one who is withdrawing	To withdraw	He is withdrawing	He withdrew
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَجَاوٍ	تَجَاوِيًا	يُتَجَاوَى	تُجَوِّىَ
The one who is withdrawn	To withdraw	It is being withdrawn	He was withdrawn
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَجَاوٍ		لا تَتَجَاوَى	تَجَاوَى
Time and Place of withdrawing		You (Male) don't withdraw!	You (Male) withdraw!

Family 7 – اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Lazim Family – do not have Passive Forms

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْفَعٍ	إِنْفِعَاءً	يَنْفَعِي	إَنْفَعَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْفَعِي		لَا تَنْفَعِ	إَنْفَعِ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form يَنْفَعِي has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 7 - **إِنْفَعَلَ** - Using **ب غ ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْبَغٍ	إِنْبِغَاءً	يُنْبَغِي	إِنْبَغَى
The thing which is appropriate	To be appropriate	It is appropriate	It was appropriate
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُنْبَغِي	لا تَنْبَغِ		إِنْبَغِ
Time and Place of being appropriate	You (Male) don't appropriate!		You (Male) be appropriate!

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَعٍ	إِفْتِعَاءٌ	يَفْتَعِي	إِفْتَعَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَعًى	إِفْتِعَاءٌ	يُفْتَعَى	أُفْتُعِيَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفْتَعًى		لَا تَفْتَعِ	إِفْتَعِ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form يُلْتَقَى has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ – Using ل ق ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُلْتَقٍ	اِلْتِقَاءٌ	يُلْتَقَى	اِلْتَقَى
The one who is meeting	To meet	He is meeting	He met
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُلْتَقًى	اِلْتِقَاءٌ	يُلْتَقَى	اُلْتُقِيَ
The one who is met	To meet	It is being met	He was met
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُلْتَقَى	لا تَلْتَقِ	اَلْتَقِ
Time and Place of meeting	You (Male) don't meet!	You (Male) meet!

Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفْعٍ	اِسْتِفْعَاءً	يَسْتَفْعِي	اِسْتَفْعَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفْعَى	اِسْتِفْعَاءً	يُسْتَفْعَى	اُسْتُفْعِيَ

Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَفْعِي	لَا تَسْتَفْعِ	اسْتَفْعِ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 10 - **اسْتَفْعَلَ** - Using **ع ل ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَعْلِي	اسْتِعْلَاءً	يَسْتَعْلِي	اسْتَعْلَى
The one who is rising	To rise	He is rising	He rose
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُسْتَعْلَى	إِسْتِعْلَاءً	يُسْتَعْلَى	أُسْتُعْلِيَ
The one who is risen	To rise	He is being risen	He was risen
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَعْلَى	لا تَسْتَعْلِ	إِسْتَعْلِ	
Time and Place of rising	You (Male) don't rise!	You (Male) rise!	

Other Changes in Big Families

Past Tense

1. هُوَ version takes an Alif Maksura ي – if 3rd Root Letter is و or ي
2. Alif Maksura ي – replaced by يا after هُوَ version
3. يا is removed for هُما – هِي – هُمْ (Feminine only) versions

4. **هُم** version – ends in “aw sound” **وَا** instead of “oo sound” **وَا**

Family 3 – Past Tense Chart - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُم فَاعِلُوا	هُمَا فَاعِلَا	هُوَ فَاعِلِي	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ فَاعِلِينَ	هُمَا فَاعِلَتَا	هِيَ فَاعِلَتْ	Feminine

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ فَاعَيْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا فَاعَيْتُمَا	أَنْتَ فَاعَيْتَ	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِنَّ فَاعَيْتِنَّ	أَنْتُمَا فَاعَيْتُمَا	أَنْتِ فَاعَيْتِ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ فَاعَيْنَا		أَنَا فَاعَيْتُ	Both

يا is removed for هُما – هِي – هُمْ (Feminine only) versions (Yellow highlight)

Example of Past Tense Family 3 - فَاعَلَ - Using ل ق ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُم لَاقُوا They all met	هُمَا لَاقِيَا Both of them met (Men)	هُوَ لَاقَى He met	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ لَاقَيْنَ They all met (Women)	هُمَا لَاقَتَا Both of them met (Women)	هِيَ لَاقَتْ She met	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ لَاقَيْتُمْ You all met	أَنْتُمَا لَاقَيْتُمَا Both of you met (Men)	أَنْتَ لَاقَيْتَ You met (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ لَاقَيْتُنَّ You all met (Women)	أَنْتُمَا لَاقَيْتُمَا Both of you met (Women)	أَنْتِ لَاقَيْتِ You met (Woman)	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ لَاقَيْنَا We met	أَنَا لَاقَيْتُ I met	Both
--------------	--	-------------------------------------	------

Present Tense

1. يا is removed for هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sounds”
2. أَنْتِ and أَنْتِ forms look the same

Family 3 – Present Tense Chart - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُمْ يُفَاعُونَ	هُمَا يُفَاعِيَانِ	هُوَ يُفَاعِيْ	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يُفَاعِينَ	هُمَا تُفَاعِيَانِ	هِيَ تُفَاعِيْ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تُفَاعُونَ	أَنْتُمَا تُفَاعِيَانِ	أَنْتَ تُفَاعِيْ	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تُفَاعِينَ	أَنْتُمَا تُفَاعِيَانِ	أَنْتِ تُفَاعِينَ	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ نُفَاعِي	أَنَا أُفَاعِي	Both
--------------	--------------------	-------------------	------

يا is removed for هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sounds” (Yellow highlight)

أَنْتِ and أَنْتَ forms look the same (Blue highlight)

Example of Present Tense Family 3 - فاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ – Using ل ق ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يُلاقُونَ They all are meeting	هُمَا يُلاقِيَانِ Both of them are meeting (Men)	هُوَ يُلاقِي He is meeting	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ يُلَاقِينَ They all are meeting (Women)	هُمَا تُلَاقِيَانِ Both of them are meeting (Women)	هِيَ تُلَاقِيْ She is meeting	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تُلَاقُونَ You all are meeting	أَنْتُمَا تُلَاقِيَانِ Both of you are meeting (Men)	أَنْتِ تُلَاقِيْ You are meeting (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تُلَاقِينَ You all are meeting (Women)	أَنْتُمَا تُلَاقِيَانِ Both of you are meeting (Women)	أَنْتِ تُلَاقِينَ You are meeting (Woman)	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نُلَاقِيْ We are meeting		أَنَا أُلَاقِيْ I am meeting	Both

Families – 5 تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ and 6 تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ

In both Families the Present Tense Form ends in Alif Maksura **ى** – this creates a Fatah sound across the chart

Example for Present Tense Family 5 - تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَتَفَعَّلُونَ	هُمَا يَتَفَعَّلَانِ	هُوَ يَتَفَعَّلِي	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ تَتَفَعَّلْنَ	هُمَا تَتَفَعَّلَانِ	هِيَ تَتَفَعَّلِي	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَتَفَعَّلُونَ	أَنْتُمَا تَتَفَعَّلَانِ	أَنْتِ تَتَفَعَّلِي	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِ تَتَفَعَّلِينَ	أَنْتُمَا تَتَفَعَّلَانِ	أَنْتِ تَتَفَعَّلِينَ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَتَفَعَّلِي		أَنَا أَتَفَعَّلِي	Both

يا is removed for هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sounds” (Yellow highlight)

أَنْتَ and أَنْتِ forms look the same (Blue highlight)

Example of Present Tense Family 5 - تَفْعَلُ يَتَفَعَّلُ – Using م ن ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُم يَتَمَنُّونَ They all are wishing	هُمَا يَتَمَنَّيَانِ Both of them are wishing (Men)	هُوَ يَتَمَنَّى He is wishing	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يَتَمَنَّيْنَ They all are wishing (Women)	هُمَا تَتَمَنَّيَانِ Both of them are wishing (Women)	هِيَ تَتَمَنَّى She is wishing	Feminine

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَتَمَنُّونَ You all are wishing	أَنْتُمَا تَتَمَنِّيَانِ Both of You are wishing (Men)	أَنْتِ تَتَمَنِّي You are wishing	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَتَمَنَّيْنَ You all are wishing (Women)	أَنْتُمَا تَتَمَنِّيَانِ Both of You are wishing (Women)	أَنْتِ تَتَمَنِّيْنَ You are wishing (Woman)	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَتَمَنَّى We are wishing		أَنَا أَتَمَنَّى I am wishing	Both

Passive Past Tense

1. يا is removed for هُمْ to prevent "ew sound"

Family 3 – Passive Past Tense Chart - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ فُوعُوا	هُمَا فُوعِيَا	هُوَ فُوعِي	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ فُوعِينَ	هُمَا فُوعِيَتَا	هِيَ فُوعِيَتْ	Feminine

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ فُوعِيتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا فُوعِيتُمَا	أَنْتِ فُوعِيتِ	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِنَّ فُوعِيتِنَّ	أَنْتُمَا فُوعِيتُمَا	أَنْتِ فُوعِيتِ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ فُوعِينَا		أَنَا فُوعِيتُ	Both

يا is removed for هُمْ to prevent “ew sound” (Yellow highlight)

Example of Passive Past Tense Family 3 - فَاعَلَ - Using ل ق ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُم لُوقُوا They all were met	هُمَا لُوقِيَا Both of them were met (Men)	هُوَ لُوقِيَ He was met	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ لُوقِينَ They all were met (Women)	هُمَا لُوقِيَتَا Both of them were met (Women)	هِيَ لُوقِيَتْ She was met	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ لُوقَيْتُمْ You all were met	أَنْتُمَا لُوقَيْتُمَا Both of you were met (Men)	أَنْتَ لُوقِيتَ You were met (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ لُوقَيْتُنَّ You all were met (Women)	أَنْتُمَا لُوقَيْتُمَا Both of you were met (Women)	أَنْتِ لُوقِيتِ You were met (Woman)	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ لُوقِينَا We were met	أَنَا لُوقِيتُ I was met	Both
--------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------	------

Passive Present Tense

1. Passive Present ends with Alif Maksura ى which creates Fatah sounds throughout chart
2. Alif Maksura ى dropped in هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sound”
3. أَنْتِ and أَنْتُ forms look the same

Family 3 – Passive Present Tense Chart - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُم يُفَاعُونَ	هُمَا يُفَاعِيَانِ	هُوَ يُفَاعِي	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ يُفَاعِينَ	هُمَا تُفَاعِيَانِ	هِيَ تُفَاعِي	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تُفَاعُونَ	أَنْتُمَا تُفَاعِيَانِ	أَنْتَ تُفَاعِي	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتِ تُفَاعِلِينَ	أَنْتُمَا تُفَاعِلَانِ	أَنْتِ تُفَاعِلِينَ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نُفَاعِلِي	أَنَا أُفَاعِلِي		Both

Alif Maksura ى dropped in هُمْ and أَنْتُمْ to prevent “ew sound” (Yellow highlight)

أَنْتِ and أَنْتِ forms look the same (Blue highlight)

Example of Passive Present Tense Family 3 - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ - Using ل
ق ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُم يُلاقُونَ They all are being met	هُمَا يُلاقِيَانِ Both of them are being met (Men)	هُوَ يُلاقِي He is being met	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يُلاقِينَ They all are being met (Women)	هُمَا تُلاقِيَانِ Both of them are being met (Women)	هِيَ تُلاقِي She is being met	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تُلاقُونَ You all are being met	أَنْتُمَا تُلاقِيَانِ Both of you are being met (Men)	أَنْتَ تُلاقِي You are being met (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِ تُلاقِينَ You all are being met (Women)	أَنْتُمَا تُلاقِيَانِ Both of you are being met	أَنْتِ تُلاقِينَ You are being met (Woman)	Feminine

		(Women)		
First Person	نَحْنُ نُلَاقِي We are being met	أَنَا أُلَاقِي I am being met	Both	

Commanding and Forbidding Forms

In أَنْتَ form for Commanding/Forbidding – Vowel is removed

Rest of Commanding/Forbidding constructed normally

Family 3 – Commanding and Forbidding Chart - فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتَ	Masculine
	تُفَاعُونَ	تُفَاعِيَانِ	تُفَاعِيْ	
	Commanding Form:	Commanding Form:	Commanding Form:	
	فَاعُوا	فَاعِيَا	فَاعٍ	
Second Person	Forbidding Form:	Forbidding Form:	Forbidding Form:	Feminine
	لا تُفَاعُوا	لا تُفَاعِيَا	لا تُفَاعِ	
	أَنْتِ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	
	تُفَاعِينَ	تُفَاعِيَانِ	تُفَاعِيْ	
Second Person	Commanding Form:	Commanding Form:	Commanding Form:	Feminine
	فَاعِينَ	فَاعِيَا	فَاعِيْ	
	أَنْتِ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ	
	تُفَاعِينَ	تُفَاعِيَانِ	تُفَاعِيْ	

	Forbidding Form: لا تُفَاعِلِينَ	Forbidding Form: لا تُفَاعِلِيَا	Forbidding Form: لا تُفَاعِلِي	
--	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--

In أَنْتَ form for Commanding/Forbidding – Vowel is removed (Yellow highlight)

Example of Commanding and Forbidding Forms for Family 3 - فَاعِلَ
يُفَاعِلُ – Using ل ق ي – to meet

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تُلَاقُونَ Commanding Form: لَاقُوا	أَنْتُمَا تُلَاقِيَانِ Commanding Form: لَاقِيَا	أَنْتِ تُلَاقِي Commanding Form: لَاقِي	Masculine

	Forbidding Form: لا تُلَاقُوا	Forbidding Form: لا تُلَاقِيَا	You (man) meet! Forbidding Form: لا تُلَاقِ You (man) do not meet!	
Second Person	أَنْتُ تُلَاقِيَنَّ Commanding Form: لَاقِيَنَّ Forbidding Form: لا تُلَاقِيَنَّ	أَنْتُمَا تُلَاقِيَانِ Commanding Form: لَاقِيَا Forbidding Form: لا تُلَاقِيَا	أَنْتِ تُلَاقِيَنَّ Commanding Form: لَاقِيَنَّ Forbidding Form: لا تُلَاقِيَنَّ	Feminine

Ism Far'il

1. Masculine Singular Form - Rafa and Jar Status - take Kasratain ِ
2. Masculine Singular Form - Nasab Status takes يَا
3. يَا is present for every other form except Masculine Plural

فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ - Masculine Chart for Family 3

Ism Fari'l is مُفَاعِلٌ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُفَاعِلُونَ	مُفَاعِلَانِ	مُفَاعِلٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُفَاعِلَيْنِ	مُفَاعِلَيْنِ	مُفَاعِلِيَّ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُفَاعِلِينَ	مُفَاعِلَيْنِ	مُفَاعِلٌ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Masculine Singular Form - Rafa and Jar Status - take Kasratain ِ (Yellow highlight)

Masculine Singular Form - Nasab Status takes يَا (Blue highlight)

يا is present for every other form except Masculine Plural (Green highlight)

Example for Masculine Chart for Family 3 – فاعِل using ل ق ي

Ism Fari'l is مُلَاقٍ

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُلَاقُونَ	مُلَاقِيَانِ	مُلَاقٍ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُلَاقِينَ	مُلَاقِيَيْنِ	مُلَاقِيًا	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُلَاقِينَ	مُلَاقِيَيْنِ	مُلَاقٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فاعِل يُفاعِلُ

Ism Fari'l is مُفَاعِلٌ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُفَاعِيَاتٌ	مُفَاعِيَتَانِ	مُفَاعِيَةٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُفَاعِيَاتٍ	مُفَاعِيَتَيْنِ	مُفَاعِيَةً	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُفَاعِيَاتِ	مُفَاعِيَتَيْنِ	مُفَاعِيَةٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Example for Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلٌ using ل ق ي

Ism Fari'l is مُلَاقٍ

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُلَاقِيَاتٌ	مُلَاقِيَتَانِ	مُلَاقِيَةٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُلَاقِيَاتٍ	مُلَاقِيَتَيْنِ	مُلَاقِيَةً	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُلَاقِيَاتِ	مُلَاقِيَتَيْنِ	مُلَاقِيَةٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Ism Mafool

1. Masculine Singular Forms end in **ي**
2. Masculine Dual and Feminine Plural Forms – Alif Maksura **ي** is

replaced by **يا**

Masculine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Ism Mafool is مُفَاعِلٌ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُفَاعِلُونَ	مُفَاعِلَانِ	مُفَاعِلٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُفَاعِلِينَ	مُفَاعِلَيْنِ	مُفَاعِلٌ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُفَاعِلِينَ	مُفَاعِلَيْنِ	مُفَاعِلٌ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Masculine Singular Forms end in **ي** (Yellow highlight)

Masculine Dual Form – Alif Maksura **ى** is replaced by **يا** (Blue highlight)

Example for Masculine Chart for Family 3 – **فَاعَلَ** using **ل ق ي**

Ism Mafool is **مُلَاقٍ**

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُلَاقُونَ	مُلَاقِيَانِ	مُلَاقٍ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُلَاقِينَ	مُلَاقِيَيْنِ	مُلَاقٍ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُلَاقِينَ	مُلَاقِيَيْنِ	مُلَاقٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Ism Mafool is **مُفَاعِلٌ**

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُفَاعِيَاتٌ	مُفَاعَاتَانِ	مُفَاعَاةٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُفَاعِيَاتٍ	مُفَاعَاتَيْنِ	مُفَاعَاةً	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُفَاعِيَاتِ	مُفَاعَاتَيْنِ	مُفَاعَاةٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Feminine Plural Form – Alif Maksura ي is replaced by يا (Yellow highlight)

Example for Feminine Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلَ using ل ق ي

Ism Mafool is مُلَاقِيٌ

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُلَاقِيَاتٌ	مُلَاقَاتَانِ	مُلَاقَاةٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُلَاقِيَاتٍ	مُلَاقَاتَيْنِ	مُلَاقَاةً	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُلَاقِيَاتِ	مُلَاقَاتَيْنِ	مُلَاقَاةٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Zharf

Same rules as Ism Mafool:

1. Masculine Singular Forms end in **يَ**
2. Masculine Dual Form – Alif Maksura **ى** is replaced by **يا**
3. Difference – Feminine Plural is used instead of Masculine plural –
1 chart for both Masculine and Feminine

Zharf Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ

Zharf is مُفَاعِلٌ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُفَاعِلَاتٌ	مُفَاعِلَانِ	مُفَاعِلٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُفَاعِلَاتٍ	مُفَاعِلَيْنِ	مُفَاعِلٌ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab

مُفَاعِيَاتٍ	مُفَاعِيَيْنِ	مُفَاعِيٍّ	جَرٌّ - Jar
--------------	---------------	------------	-------------

Example Zharf Chart for Family 3 – فَاعِلَ using ل ق ي

Zharf is مُلَاقِيٍّ

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُلَاقِيَّاتٌ	مُلَاقِيَّانِ	مُلَاقِيٍّ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُلَاقِيَّاتٍ	مُلَاقِيَّيْنِ	مُلَاقِيٍّ	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
مُلَاقِيَّاتٍ	مُلَاقِيَّيْنِ	مُلَاقِيٍّ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Masdar

Masdar of most families fit normally into the Masculine chart

Exception – Family 5 – تَفَعَّلَ and Family 6 – تَفَاعَلَ

These two follow pattern of Ism Far'il:

1. Masculine Singular Form - Rafa and Jar Status - take Kasratāin ِ ِ

2. Masculine Singular Form - Nasab Status takes يَا

3. يَا is present for every other form except Masculine Plural

4. Difference – Feminine Plural is used instead of Masculine plural –

1 chart for both Masculine and Feminine

Masdar Chart for Family 5 – فَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ

Zharf is مُتَفَعِّلٌ Ism Far'il is مُتَفَعِّعٌ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
تَفَعَّلَاتٌ	تَفَعَّلَانِ	تَفَعَّلَ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
تَفَعَّلَاتٍ	تَفَعَّلَيْنِ	تَفَعَّلَا	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
تَفَعَّلَاتِ	تَفَعَّلَيْنِ	تَفَعَّلَ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Example Masdar Chart for Family 5 – تَفَعَّلَ using م ن ي

Zharf is مُتَمَنٍّ Ism Far'il is مُتَمَنِّىً

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
تَمَنِّيَّاتٌ	تَمَنِّيَانِ	تَمَنٍّ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
تَمَنِّيَّاتٍ	تَمَنِّيَيْنِ	تَمَنِّيَا	نَصَبٌ - Nasab
تَمَنِّيَّاتِ	تَمَنِّيَيْنِ	تَمَنٍّ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Small Families

Past Tense/Present Tense

Some cases: the Harakat is replaced with long vowel

Sub Family 1- فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Past Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif ا

Present Tense “u sound” shows as a و

فَعَا يَفْعُو becomes فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Past Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif Maksura ى

Present Tense “i sound” shows as a Yah ي

فَعَى يَفْعِي becomes فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Past Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif Maksura ى

Present Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif Maksura ى

فَعَى يَفْعَى becomes فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

Sub Family 4 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Past Tense “i sound” shows as a Yah ي

Present Tense “a sound” shows as a Alif Maksura ى

فَعِيَ يَفْعَى becomes فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Passives

Follow the Pattern:

Passive Past Tense: فُعِيَ

Passive Present Tense: يُفْعَى

Ism Far'il

Follows the Pattern: فَاعٍ

Ism Mafool

For Sub Family 1- فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - follows pattern: مَفْعُوٌّ

For all other Sub Families – follows pattern: مَفْعِيٌّ

Zharf

Follows the Pattern: مَفْعِيٌّ

Ism Alatun

Follows the Pattern: مِفْعَاةٌ

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعٍ	N/A	يَفْعُوْ	فَعَا

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُوٌّ	N/A	يُفْعَى	فُعِيَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَاةٌ	مَفْعَى	لَا تَفْعُ	أَفْعُ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form فُ has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 1: فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using ت ل و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l

تَالٍ	تِلَاوَةً	يَتْلُو	تَلَا
The one who is reciting	To recite	He is reciting	He recited/followed
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَتْلُوءٌ	تِلَاوَةً	يُتْلَى	تُلِيَ
The thing that is recited	To recite	It is being recited	It was recited
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِثْلَةٌ	مَتْلًى	لَا تَتْلُ	اَتْلُ
Tool for reciting	Time and Place of reciting	You (Male) don't recite!	You (Male) recite!

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 2

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعٍ	N/A	يَفْعِي	فَعَّى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعِيٌّ	N/A	يُفْعَى	فُعِيَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَاةٌ	مَفْعَى	لَا تَفْعِ	إِفْعِ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 2: **رَمَى** Using **يُ** **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
رَامٍ	رَمْيَةٌ	يُرْمِي	رَمَى
The one who is throwing	To throw	He is throwing	He threw
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَرْمِيٌّ	رَمْيَةٌ	يُرْمَى	رُمِيَ
The thing that is	To throw	It is being thrown	It was thrown

thrown			
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِرْمَاةٌ	مَرْمَى	لا تَرْمِ	ارْمِ
Tool for throwing	Time and Place of throwing	You (Male) don't throw!	You (Male) throw!

فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 3

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعٍ	N/A	يَفْعِي	فَعَّى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مَفْعِيّ	N/A	يُفْعَى	فُعِيَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَاةٌ	مَفْعَى	لَا تَفْعَ	إِفْعَ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 3: فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ط غ ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l

طَاغٍ	طُغْيَانًا	يُطْغَى	طَغَى
The one who is transgressing	To transgress	He is transgressing	He transgressed
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَطْغِيٌّ	طُغْيَانًا	يُطْغَى	طَغِيَ
The thing that is transgressed	To transgress	It is being transgressed	It was transgressed
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِطْغَاةٌ	مَطْغًى	لَا تَطْغَ	إِطْغَ
Tool for transgressing	Time and Place of transgressing	You (Male) don't transgress!	You (Male) transgress!

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 4

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعٍ	N/A	يَفْعِي	فَعِيَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعِيٌّ	N/A	يُفْعَى	فُعِيَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَاةٌ	مَفْعَى	لَا تَفْعَ	إِفْعَ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 4: **فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ** Using **ب ق ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
بَاقٍ	بَقَاءٌ	يَبْقَى	بَقِيَ
The one who is remaining	To remain	He is remaining	He remained
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَبْقَىٌ	بَقَاءٌ	يُبْقَى	بُقِيَ
The thing that is	To remain	It is being made	It was made to

made to remain		to remain	remain
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مَبْقَاةٌ	مَبَقَّى	لَا تَبَقَ	إِبْقَ
Tool for remaining	Time and Place of remaining	You (Male) don't remain!	You (Male) remain!

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 5

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعٍ	N/A	يَفْعِي	فَعِيَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مَفْعِيّ	N/A	يُفْعَى	فُعِيَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَاةٌ	مَفْعَى	لَا تَفْعِ	إِفْعِ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

فَعْلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 6

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense Fi'l
		Fi'l	

فَاعٍ	N/A	يَفْعُوْ	فَعَا
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَاةٌ	مَفْعَى	لَا تَفْعُ	أَفْعُ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form فُعْ has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Other changes in Small Families

Similar to changes in Big Families but:

If 3rd Root Letter is و – then و comes back in Past Tense and Present Tense charts

If 3rd Root Letter is ي – then ي comes back in Past Tense and Present Tense charts

Sub Family 1 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ Past Tense: فَعَوْا Present Tense: يَفْعُونَ	هُمَا Past Tense: فَعَوَا Present Tense: يَفْعُوَانِ	هُوَ Past Tense: فَعَا Present Tense: يَفْعُوُ	Masculine

Third Person	هَنَّ Past Tense: فَعَوْنَ Present Tense: يَفْعُونَ	هُمَا Past Tense: فَعَتَا Present Tense: تَفْعُوَانِ	هِيَ Past Tense: فَعَتْ Present Tense: تَفْعُوْ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ Past Tense: فَعَوْتُمْ Present Tense: تَفْعُونَ	أَنْتُمَا Past Tense: فَعَوْتُمَا Present Tense: تَفْعُوَانِ	أَنْتَ Past Tense: فَعَوْتَ Present Tense: تَفْعُوْ	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتُ Past Tense: فَعَوْتُ Present Tense: تَفْعُلُ	أَنْتُمَا Past Tense: فَعَوْتُمَا Present Tense: تَفْعُلَانِ	أَنْتِ Past Tense: فَعَوْتِ Present Tense: تَفْعِلِينَ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ Past Tense: فَعَوْنَا Present Tense: نَفْعُو		أَنَا Past Tense: فَعَوْتُ Present Tense: أَفْعُو	Both

--	--	--	--

Example of Sub Family 1 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

using ت ل و

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ Past Tense: تَلَّوْا They all recited Present Tense: يَتْلُونُ	هُمَا Past Tense: تَلَّوَا Both of them recited (Men) Present Tense: يَتْلَوَانِ	هُوَ Past Tense: تَلَا He recited/followed Present Tense:	Masculine

	They all are reciting	Both of them are reciting (Men)	يَتْلُو He is reciting/following	
Third Person	هُنَّ Past Tense: تَلَوْنَ They all recited (Women) Present Tense: يَتْلُونَّ They all are reciting (Women)	هُمَا Past Tense: تَلَتَا Both of them recited (Women) Present Tense: تَتْلَوَانِ Both of them are reciting (Women)	هِيَ Past Tense: تَلَتْ She recited Present Tense: تَتْلُو She is reciting	Feminine

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ Past Tense: تَلَوْتُمْ You all recited Present Tense: تَتْلُونَ You all are reciting	أَنْتُمَا Past Tense: تَلَوْتُمَا Both of You recited (Men) Present Tense: تَتْلَوَانِ Both of You are reciting (Men)	أَنْتَ Past Tense: تَلَوْتَ You recited (Man) Present Tense: تَتْلُو You are reciting (Man)	Masculine
	أَنْتُنَّ Past Tense: تَلَوْتُنَّ All of You recited (Women)	أَنْتُمَا Past Tense: تَلَوْتُمَا Both of You recited (Women)	أَنْتِ Past Tense: تَلَوْتَ You recited (Woman)	Feminine

	Present Tense: تَتْلُونَ You all are reciting (Women)	Present Tense: تَتْلُوَانِ Both of You are reciting (Women)	Present Tense: تَتْلِينَ You are reciting (Woman)	
First Person	نَحْنُ Past Tense: تَلَوْنَا We recited Present Tense: نَتْلُو We are reciting		أَنَا Past Tense: تَلَوْتُ I recited Present Tense: أَتْلُو I am reciting	Both

--	--	--	--

Sub Family 2 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ Past Tense: فَعَوْا Present Tense: يَفْعُونَ	هُمَا Past Tense: فَعَيَا Present Tense: يَفْعِيَانِ	هُوَ Past Tense: فَعَى Present Tense: يَفْعِي	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ Past Tense: فَعَيْنَ Present Tense: يَفْعَيْنَ	هُمَا Past Tense: فَعَتَا Present Tense: تَفْعِيَانِ	هِيَ Past Tense: فَعَتْ Present Tense: تَفْعِي	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ Past Tense: فَعَيْتُمْ Present Tense: تَفْعُونَ	أَنْتُمَا Past Tense: فَعَيْتُمَا Present Tense: تَفْعِيَانِ	أَنْتِ Past Tense: فَعَيْتَ Present Tense: تَفْعِي	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِ Past Tense: فَعَيْتِ Present	أَنْتُمَا Past Tense: فَعَيْتُمَا Present	أَنْتِ Past Tense: فَعَيْتِ Present	Feminine

	Tense: تَفْعِلْنَ	Tense: تَفْعِيَانِ	Tense: تَفْعِلَنَّ	
First Person	نَحْنُ Past Tense: فَعَعَيْنَا Present Tense: نَفْعِي		أَنَا Past Tense: فَعَعَيْتُ Present Tense: أَفْعِي	Both

Example of Sub Family 2 - Past and Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

using ر م ي

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ Past Tense: رَمَوْا They all threw Present Tense: يَرْمُونَ They all are throwing	هُمَا Past Tense: رَمَيَا Both of them threw (Men) Present Tense: يَرْمِيَانِ Both of them are throwing (Men)	هُوَ Past Tense: رَمَى He threw Present Tense: يَرْمِي He is throwing	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ Past Tense: رَمَيْنَ They all threw (Women)	هُمَا Past Tense: رَمَتَا Both of them threw (Women)	هِيَ Past Tense: رَمَتْ She threw	Feminine

	Present Tense: يَرْمِينَ They all are throwing (Women)	Present Tense: تَرْمِيَانِ Both of them are throwing (Women)	Present Tense: تَرْمِيْ She is throwing	
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ Past Tense: رَمَيْتُمْ You all threw Present Tense: تَرْمُونَ You all are throwing	أَنْتُمَا Past Tense: رَمَيْتُمَا Both of You threw (Men) Present Tense: تَرْمِيَانِ Both of You are throwing (Men)	أَنْتَ Past Tense: رَمَيْتَ You threw (Man) Present Tense: تَرْمِيْ You are throwing	Masculine

			(Man)	
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ Past Tense: رَمَيْتُنَّ All of You threw (Women) Present Tense: تَرْمِينَ You all are throwing (Women)	أَنْتُمَا Past Tense: رَمَيْتُمَا Both of You threw (Women) Present Tense: تَرْمِيَانِ Both of You are throwing (Women)	أَنْتِ Past Tense: رَمَيْتِ You threw (Woman) Present Tense: تَرْمِينَ You are throwing (Woman)	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ Past Tense: رَمَيْنَا We threw Present Tense: نَرْمِي We are throwing	أَنَا Past Tense: رَمَيْتُ I threw Present Tense: أَرْمِي I am throwing	Both
--------------	--	---	------

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Irregular Verbs - Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ - Lafeefun لَفِيفٌ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Lafeefun Mafrukun لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ is when one of the Root Letters is و or ي

Lafeefun Mafrukun لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

1. When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي
2. Combination of 1st Root Letter is و or ي – Mithalun مِثَالٌ and 3rd

Root Letter is و or ي – Naqisun نَاقِصٌ

3. Same rules of Mithalun and Naqisun apply both in Small and Big Families

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 1st Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُوعٍ	إِيعَاءٌ	يُوعِي	أُوعِيَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُوعًى	إِيعَاءٌ	يُوعَى	أُوعِيَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُوعًى	لَا تُوعِ		أُوعِ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Masdar – **و** replaced with **ي** to prevent “ew sound” (Blue highlight)

Example of Family 4 - **أَفْعَلَ** - Using **و ص ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُوصٍ	إِصْبَاءٌ	يُوصِي	أَوْصَى
The one who is commanding	To command	He is commanding	He commanded
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُوصِيٌّ	إِصْبَاءٌ	يُوصَى	أُوصِيَ
The one who is	To command	He is being	He was

commanded		commanding	commanded
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُوصِيٌّ		لا تُوصِ	أُوصِ
Time and Place of commanding		You (Male) don't command!	You (Male) command!

Sub Family 2 فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 1st Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
وَاعٍ	N/A	يَعِي	وَعَى
Ism Mafool (the)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense	Passive Past

thing acted on)		Fi'l	Tense Fi'l
مَوْعِيٌّ	N/A	يُوعَى	وُعِيَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِيعَاةٌ	مَوْعَى	لَا تَعِ	عِ

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Ism Alatun – و replaced with **ي** to prevent “ew sound” (Blue highlight)

Example using Sub Family 2: **وَلِي** Using **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	---------------	-----------------

		Fi'l	
وَالٍ	وَلَايَةٌ	يَلِي	وَلَّى
The one who is befriending	To befriend	He is befriending	He befriended
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَوْليُّ	وَلَايَةٌ	يُؤَلَّى	وُلِيَ
The one who is befriended	To befriend	He is being befriended	He was befriended
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِثْلًا	مَوْليُّ	لَا تَلِ	لِ
Tool for befriending	Time and Place of befriending	You (Male) don't befriend!	You (Male) befriend!

Lafeefun Makrunun لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ

Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ is when one of the Root Letters is و or ي

Lafeefun Makrunun لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ - Subgroup of Mutalun مُعْتَلٌّ

1. When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي
2. Behaves like Naqisun (when 3rd Root Letter is و or ي)
3. Same rules of Naqisun apply both in Small and Big Families

Family 3 - فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l

مُفَاوٍ	فِوَاءٌ مُفَاوَاةٌ	يُفَاوِي	فَاوَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاوِي	فِوَاءٌ مُفَاوَاةٌ	يُفَاوَى	فُؤَوِيَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفَاوِي		لَا تُفَاوِ	فَاوِ

Treated like a normal Naqisun

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **يُ** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example of Family 3 - فاعِلَ - Using س و ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسَاوٍ	سِوَاءً مُسَاوَاةً	يُسَاوِي	سَاوَى
The one who is equalizing	To equalize	He is equalizing	He equalized
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسَاوًى	سِوَاءً مُسَاوَاةً	يُسَاوَى	سُوِيَ
The one/thing which is equalized	To equalized	He is being equalized	He was equalized
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسَاوًى		لَا تُسَاوِ	سَاوِ

Time and Place of equalizing	You (Male) don't equalize!	You (Male) equalize!

Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاوٍ	N/A	يَفْوِي	فَوَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْوِيٌّ	N/A	يُفْوَى	فُويَ

Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْوَاةٌ	مَفْوًى	لَا تَفْوِ	اِفْوِ

Treated like a normal Naqisun

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form ي has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 2: ك وَي Using فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
كَوٍ	كَيًّا	يَكْوِي	كَوَى
The one who is	To iron	He is ironing	He ironed

ironing			
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَكْوِيٌّ	كَيًّا	يُكْوَى	كُوِيَ
The thing which is ironed	To iron	It is being ironed	It was ironed
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِكْوَاةٌ	مَكْوًى	لَا تَكْوِ	اِكْوِ
Tool for ironing	Time and Place of ironing	You (Male) don't iron!	You (Male) iron!

فَعْلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعِلُ	فَعَّلَ فَعَّلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِّلَ فُعِّلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْيَاةٌ	مَفْيًى	لَا تَفْعِلْ	اَفْعِلْ

Treated like a normal Naqisun

When making a Fi'l in Lightest form when the last letter in normal Present Tense form has a Sukoon on it or has no Harakat on it – the letter is dropped – so in Command and Forbidding Form the normal form **ي** has been dropped (Yellow highlight)

Past Tense can be treated as a Lafeefun or a Mudhaff

Example using Sub Family 4: **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ** Using **ع ي ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
عِي	عَيَّا	يُعِي	عِي عِي
The one who is incapable of	To be incapable of	He is incapable of	He was incapable of
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَعِي	عَيَّا	يُعِي	عِي

The one who is made incapable of	To be incapable of	He is being made incapable of	He was made incapable of
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِغْيَاةٌ	مَعْيِيَّ	لَا تَعْيِ	إِعْيِ
Tool for being incapable of	Time and Place of being incapable of	You (Male) don't be incapable of!	You (Male) be incapable of!

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Irregular Verbs - Moodaarefun مُضَاعَفٌ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are same - letters combine and take a Shadda e.g. شَقَّ (Root Letters: ش ق ق)

All Families affected except the two which already have Shadda in them:

Family 2 فَعَّلَ and Family 5 تَفَعَّلَ

Big Families

The combination form behave in the same way across the Big Families

Families 2 and 5 unaffected

Rules

1. The same 2nd and 3rd Root letters combine and take a Shadda
2. Three Forms of Command and Forbidding produced
 - 1st Form: The last letter takes a Fatah and keeps the Shadda
 - 2nd Form: The last letter takes a Kasra and keeps the Shadda

- 3rd Form: The Shadda is dropped – the two letters separate and a normal Command or Forbidding form is produced

Family 3 - فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعِلٌ	فِلَالًا مُفَالَّةً	يُفَاعِلُ	قَالَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعِلٌ	فِلَالًا مُفَالَّةً	يُفَاعِلُ	فُؤِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفَاعِلٌ		لَا تُفَاعِلَ	قَالَ

	لَا تُقَالُ	قَالَ
	لَا تُقَالِ	قَالِ

Ism Far'il – Ism Mafool – Zharf – all look the same (Yellow highlight)

Present Tense – Passive Present Tense – looks the same (Blue highlight)

Past Tense – 1st Command Form – looks the same (Dark blue highlight)

1st Masdar Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Black highlight)

3rd Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Purpose highlight)

Example of Family 3 - فَاعِلَ - Using ض ر ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُضَارٌّ	ضِرَارًا مُضَارَّةً	يُضَارُّ	ضَارَّ

The one who is harming	To harm	He is harming	He harmed
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُضَارٌّ	ضِرَارًا مُضَارَّةً	يُضَارُّ	ضُوِّرَ
The one who is harmed	To harm	He is being harmed	He was harmed
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُضَارٌّ		لا تُضَارُّ لا تُضَارِّ لا تُضَارِرْ	ضَارٌّ ضَارِّ ضَارِرْ
Time and Place of harming		You (Male) don't harm!	You (Male) harm!

Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفِلٌّ	إِفْلَالًا	يُفِلُّ	أَفْلَّ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَلٌّ	إِفْلَالًا	يُفَلُّ	أُفِلَّ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفَلٌّ	لا تُفِلَّ لا تُفَلَّ لا تُفِلِّلْ		أَفِلَّ أَفِلَّ أَفِلِّلْ

The Harakat on the 1st Root Letter is no longer a Sukoon – the Fatah from the 2nd Root Letter has moved over to the 1st Root Letter: E.g. normally

أَفْعَلْ becomes أَفْلَّ

In Masdar the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Yellow highlight)

3rd Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Blue highlight)

Example of Family 4 - أَفْعَلْ - Using ع د د ع

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُعِدٌّ	إِعْدَادًا	يُعِدُّ	أَعَدَّ
The one who is preparing	To prepare	He is preparing	He prepared
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُعَدُّ	إِعْدَادًا	يُعَدُّ	أُعَدَّ
The thing which is prepared	To prepare	It is being prepared	It was prepared
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُعَدُّ		لا تُعَدُّ لا تُعَدِّ لا تُعَدِّدُ	أُعَدَّ أُعَدِّ أُعَدِّدُ
Time and Place of preparing		You (Male) don't prepare!	You (Male) prepare!

تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	--------------------	-----------------

مُتَّفَالٌ	تَفَالًا	يَتَّفَالُ	تَفَالٌ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّفَالٌ	تَفَالًا	يُتَّفَالُ	تُفُولٌ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَّفَالٌ		لا تَتَّفَالُ لا تَتَّفَالُ لا تَتَّفَالُ	تَفَالٌ تَفَالُ تَفَالُ

Ism Far'il – Ism Mafool – Zharf – all look the same (Yellow highlight)

Past Tense – 1st Command Form – looks the same (Dark blue highlight)

In Masdar – the Shadda remains (unlike some other Big Families) –(Blue highlight)

3rd Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Black highlight)

Example of Family 6 - تَفَاعَلَ - Using م س س م

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَمَاسٌّ	تَمَاسًّا	يَتَمَاسُّ	تَمَاسَّ
The one who is touching	To touch	He is touching	He touched (one another)
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَمَاسٌّ	تَمَاسًّا	يُتَمَاسُّ	تُمُوسَّ
The one who is touched	To touch	He is being touched	He was touched
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُتَمَّاسٌ	لا تَتَمَّاسٌ لا تَتَمَّاسٌ لا تَتَمَّاسَسُنْ	تَمَّاسٌ تَمَّاسٌ تَمَّاسَسُنْ
Time and Place of touching	You (Male) don't touch!	You (Male) touch!

Family 7 – اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Lazim Family – do not have Passive Forms

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْقَلٌ	اِنْفِلَآءٌ	يَنْقَلُ	اِنْقَلَّ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْقَلٌ		لا تَنْقَلْ لا تَنْقَلْ لا تَنْقِلْ	انْقَلْ انْقَلْ انْقِلْ

Ism Far'il – Zharf – look the same (Yellow highlight)

Past Tense – 1st Command Form – looks the same (Dark blue highlight)

In Masdar the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Blue highlight)

3rd Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Black highlight)

Example of Family 7 - انْفَعَلَ - Using ق ض ض

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	--------------------	-----------------

مُنْقَضٌ	إِنْقِضَاظًا	يَنْقُضُ	إِنْقَضَ
The one who is being dropped	To be dropped	He is being dropped	He was dropped
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْقَضٌ		لا تَنْقُضْ لا تَنْقُضْ لا تَنْقِضْ	إِنْقَضْ إِنْقُضْ إِنْقِضْ
Time and Place of being dropped		You (Male) don't be dropped!	You (Male) be dropped!

Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَلٌ	اِفْتِلَالًا	يَفْتَلُ	اِفْتَلَّ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَلٌ	اِفْتِلَالًا	يُفْتَلُ	اُفْتُلَّ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفْتَلٌ	لا تَفْتَلُ لا تَفْتَلْ		اِفْتَلْ اِفْتَلَّ

	لا تَفْتَلِلْ	اِفْتَلِلْ
--	---------------	------------

Ism Far'il – Ism Mafool – Zharf – all look the same (Yellow highlight)

Past Tense – 1st Command Form – looks the same (Dark blue highlight)

In Masdar the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Blue highlight)

3rd Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Black highlight)

Example of Family 8 - اِفْتَعَلَ - Using ر د د

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُرْتَدٌّ	إِرْتِدَادًا	يَرْتَدُّ	إَرْتَدَّ
The one who is turning back	To turn back	He is turning back	He turned back
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُرْتَدٌّ	إِرْتِدَادًا	يُرْتَدُّ	أُرْتُدَّ
The one who is turned back	To turn back	He is being turned back	He was turned back
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُرْتَدٌّ		لا تَرْتَدُّ لا تَرْتَدِّ لا تَرْتَدِدْ	إِرْتَدَّ إِرْتَدِّ إِرْتَدِدْ
Time and Place of turning back		You (Male) don't turn back!	You (Male) turn back!

Family 10 - إِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	---------------	-----------------

		Fi'l	
مُسْتَفِلٌّ	إِسْتِفْلًا	يُسْتَفِلُّ	إِسْتَفَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفَلٌّ	إِسْتِفْلًا	يُسْتَفَلُّ	أُسْتُفِلَّ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَفَلٌّ		لا تَسْتَفِلُّ لا تَسْتَفِلَّ لا تَسْتَفِلْ	إِسْتَفِلَّ إِسْتَفِلْ إِسْتَفِلْ

The original Sukoon on the 1st Root Letter has been removed when the Shadda is present e.g. **إِسْتَفَعَلَّ** becomes **إِسْتَفَلَّ**

Past Tense and Present Tense - the Sukoon on the 1st Root Letter is replaced by the Harakat on the 2nd Root Letter – اِسْتَفْعَلَ becomes

يَسْتَفْعِلُ and اِسْتَفْلَ becomes يَسْتَفِلُ

In Masdar the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split – and constructed normally (Blue highlight)

3rd Command Form and Forbidding Forms – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Command and Forbidding formed (Black highlight)

Example of Family 10 - اِسْتَفْعَلَ – Using ز ل ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَزِلُّ	اِسْتِزْلَالًا	يَسْتَزِلُّ	اِسْتَزَلَ
The one who is causing to slip	To cause to slip	He is causing to slip	He caused to slip
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَزَلُّ	اِسْتِزْلَالًا	يُسْتَزَلُّ	اُسْتُزِلَ

The one who is made to slip	To cause to slip	He is being made to slip	He was made to slip
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَزِلُّ		لا تَسْتَزِلَّ لا تَسْتَزِلَّ لا تَسْتَزِلُّ	اِسْتَزِلَّ اِسْتَزِلَّ اِسْتَزِلُّ
Time and Place of causing to slip		You (Male) don't cause to slip!	You (Male) cause to slip!

Other Changes in all Families

Past Tense – the Shadda is dropped from هُنَّ version onwards – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done

Present Tense - the Shadda is dropped only for هُنَّ and أَنْتِ versions – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done

Family 4 – Past Tense Chart - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ أَفَلَّوْا	هُمَا أَفَلَّا	هُوَ أَفَلَّ	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ أَفَلَّيْنَ	هُمَا أَفَلَّتَا	هِيَ أَفَلَّتْ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ أَفَلَلْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا أَفَلَلْتُمَا	أَنْتَ أَفَلَلْتَ	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتِ أَفْلَلْتِ	أَنْتُمَا أَفْلَلْتُمَا	أَنْتِ أَفْلَلْتِ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ أَفْلَلْنَا		أَنَا أَفْلَلْتُ	Both

Past Tense – the Shadda is dropped from هُنَّ version onwards – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done

Example of Past Tense Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ - Using ع د د

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ أَعَدُّوا They all prepared	هُمَا أَعَدَّا Both of them prepared (Men)	هُوَ أَعَدَّ He prepared	Masculine

Third Person	هُنَّ أَعَدَدْنَ They all prepared (Women)	هُمَا أَعَدَّتَا Both of them prepared (Women)	هِيَ أَعَدَّتْ She prepared	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ أَعَدَدْتُمْ You all prepared	أَنْتُمَا أَعَدَدْتُمَا Both of you prepared (Men)	أَنْتَ أَعَدَدْتَ You prepared (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِنَّ أَعَدَدْتِنَّ You all prepared (Women)	أَنْتُمَا أَعَدَدْتُمَا Both of you prepared (Women)	أَنْتِ أَعَدَدْتِ You prepared (Woman)	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ أَعَدَدْنَا We prepared		أَنَا أَعَدَدْتُ I prepared	Both

Family 4 – Present Tense Chart - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يُفْلُونَ	هُمَا يُفْلَانِ	هُوَ يُفِلُّ	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ يُفْلِنَنَّ	هُمَا تُفْلَانِ	هِيَ تُفِلُّ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تُفْلُونَ	أَنْتُمَا تُفْلَانِ	أَنْتَ تُفِلُّ	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتِ تُفْلِنِ	أَنْتُمَا تُفْلَانِ	أَنْتِ تُفْلِنِ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نُفِلُ		أَنَا أُفِلُّ	Both

Present Tense - the Shadda is dropped only for أَنْتِ and أَنْتِ versions
– 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done (Yellow highlight)

Example of Present Tense Family 4 - يُفْعِلُ – Using ع د د

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُمْ يُعِدُّونَ They all are preparing	هُمَا يُعِدَّانِ Both of them are preparing (Men)	هُوَ يُعِدُّ He is preparing	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يُعِدِّدْنَ They all are preparing (Women)	هُمَا تُعِدَّانِ Both of them are preparing (Women)	هِيَ تُعِدُّ She is preparing	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تُعِدُّونَ You all are preparing	أَنْتُمَا تُعِدَّانِ Both of you are preparing (Men)	أَنْتَ تُعِدُّ You are preparing (Man)	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تُعِدُّنَ You all are preparing (Women)	أَنْتُمَا تُعِدَّانِ Both of you are preparing (Women)	أَنْتِ تُعِدِّينَ You are preparing (Woman)	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نُعِدُّ We are preparing		أَنَا أَعِدُّ I am preparing	Both

Small Families

Rules

1. The same 2nd and 3rd Root letters combine and take a Shadda
2. Three Forms of Command and Forbidding produced
 - 1st Form: The last letter takes a Fatah and keeps the Shadda
 - 2nd Form: The last letter takes a Kasra and keeps the Shadda
 - 3rd Form: The Shadda is dropped – the two letters separate and a normal Command or Forbidding form is produced

3. Past Tense looks the same for all Sub Families – pattern: **فَلَّ**

4. Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2nd Root

Letter is moved to the 1st Root Letter

Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are **ل**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
قَالٌ	N/A	يَفْعُلُ	فَلَّ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُلَّ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the	Zharf (Place/Time of	Forbidding Form	Command Form

Action with)	Action)		
مِفْعَلٌ	مَفْعَلٌ	لا تَفْعَلْ	فُعلٌ
مِفْعَالٌ	مَفْعِلٌ	لا تَفْعُلْ	فُعلٌ
مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلَةٌ	لا تَفْعُلْ	أَفْعُلْ

Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2nd Root Letter is moved to the 1st Root Letter – يَفْعُلُ becomes فُعلٌ

3rd Command Form, Forbidding Forms and Ism Mafool and 2nd Ism Alatun Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Sarf is carried out (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 1: فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using ظ ن ن

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
ظَانٌ	ظَنًّا	يَظُنُّ	ظَنَّ

The one who is assuming	To assume	He is assuming	He assumed
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَظْنُونٌ	ظَنَّا	يُظَنُّ	ظُنَّ
The thing that is being assumed	To assume	It is being assumed	It was assumed
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِظْنٌ مِظْنَانٌ مِظْنَةٌ	مَظْنٌ مَظِنٌ مَظْنَةٌ	لَا تَظُنْ لَا تَظُنَّ لَا تَظُنُّ	ظُنْ ظُنَّ أَظُنْ
Tool for assuming	Time and Place of assuming	You (Male) don't assume!	You (Male) assume!

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 2

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَالٌّ	N/A	يَفْعُلُ	فَعَّلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِّلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ	مَفْعَلٌ	لَا تَفْعَلْ	فَعِّلْ
مِفْعَالٌ	مَفْعِلٌ	لَا تَفْعِلْ	فَعِّلْ
مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلَةٌ	لَا تَفْعِلْ	إِفْعِلْ

--	--	--	--

Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2nd Root Letter is moved to the 1st Root Letter – يَفْعَلُ becomes يَفِلُّ

3rd Command Form, Forbidding Forms and Ism Mafool and 2nd Ism Alatun Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Sarf is carried out (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 2: فَرَّ فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ Using ف ر ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَارٌّ	فِرَارًا	يَفِرُّ	فَرَّ
The one who is fleeing	To flee	He is fleeing	He fled
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مَفْرُورٌ	فِرَارًا	يُفَرُّ	فُرِّ
The thing that is fled from	To flee	It is being fled from	It was fled from
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْرٌ مِفْرَارٌ مِفْرَةٌ	مَفَرٌ مَفِرٌ مَفَرَةٌ	لا تَفِرُّ لا تَفِرُّ لا تَفِرُّ	فِرْ فِرْ اِفِرْ
Tool for fleeing	Time and Place of fleeing	You (Male) don't flee!	You (Male) flee!

فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 3

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	--------------------	-----------------

فَالٌ	N/A	يَفْلُ	فُلٌ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْلُولٌ	N/A	يُفَلُّ	فُلٌ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْلٌ مِفْلَالٌ مِفْلَةٌ	مَفْلٌ مَفِلٌ مَفْلَةٌ	لا تَفْلٌ لا تَفِلٌ لا تَفْلَلٌ	فُلٌ فِلٌ إِفْلَلٌ

Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2nd Root Letter is moved to the 1st Root Letter – يَفْعَلُ becomes يَفْلُ

3rd Command Form, Forbidding Forms and Ism Mafool and 2nd Ism Alatun Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Sarf is carried out (Yellow highlight)

Example using Sub Family 3: فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using م س س م

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مَاسٌّ	مَسًّا	يَمَسُّ	مَسَّ
The one who is touching	To touch	He is touching	He touched
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَمْسُوسٌ	مَسًّا	يُمَسُّ	مُسَّ
The one who is touched	To touch	He is being touched	He was touched

Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِمَّسٍ	مَمَّسٍ	لَا تَمَسَّ	مَسَّ
مِمَّسَاسٍ	مَمِّسٍ	لَا تَمَسِّ	مَسِّ
مِمَّسَّةٌ	مَمَّسَةٌ	لَا تَمَسَّسْ	إِمَّسَّسْ
Tool for touching	Time and Place of touching	You (Male) don't touch!	You (Male) touch!

فَعْلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
قَالَ	N/A	يَقُولُ	قَالَ

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْلُوءٌ	N/A	يُفَلُّ	فُلَّ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْلٌ	مَفْلٌ	لا تَفَلْ	فَلْ
مِفْلَالٌ	مَفِلٌ	لا تَفَلِّ	فَلِّ
مِفْلَةٌ	مَفْلَةٌ	لا تَفَلِّلْ	إِفْلَلْ

Present Tense – the normal Harakat which goes on the 2nd Root Letter is moved to the 1st Root Letter – يَفْعَلُ becomes يُفَلُّ

3rd Command Form, Forbidding Forms and Ism Mafool and 2nd Ism Alatun Form – the Shadda is dropped – the two joined letters split and a normal Sarf is carried out (Yellow highlight)

Identical to Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ - يَفْعَلُ - only differentiate between the two when looking at other changes e.g. the Past Tense chart for each

Example using Sub Family 4: ظ ل ل Using فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
ظَالٌّ	ظُلُوءًا	يُظَلُّ	ظَلَّ
The one who is remaining	To remain	He is remaining	He remained
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَظْلُوءٌ	ظُلُوءًا	يُظَلُّ	ظُلَّ
The one who is made to remain	To remain	He is being made to remain	He was made to remain

Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِظْلٌ	مَظْلٌ	لا تَظَلَّ	ظَلَّ
مِظْلَالٌ	مَظِلٌ	لا تَظَلَّ	ظَلَّ
مِظْلَةٌ	مَظْلَةٌ	لا تَظَلِّلْ	إِظْلَلْ
Tool for remaining	Time and Place of remaining	You (Male) don't remain!	You (Male) remain!

Other Changes in all Families

Ism Tafdeel (Comparative/Superlative) – if 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same – they join and take a Shadda – and the Sukoon on the 1st Root Letter is replaced with Fatah e.g. أَفْعَلُ becomes أَفْلٌ

Past Tense – the Shadda is dropped from هُنَّ version onwards – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done – the hidden Harakat on the 2nd Root Letter returns

Present Tense - the Shadda is dropped only for هُنَّ and أَنْتُنَّ versions – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done – the hidden Harakat on the 2nd Root Letter returns

Sub Family 1 – Past Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ فَلُّوا	هُمَا فَلَّا	هُوَ فَلَّ	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ فَلَّيْنَ	هُمَا فَلَّتَا	هِيَ فَلَّتْ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ فَلَلْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا فَلَلْتُمَا	أَنْتَ فَلَلْتَ	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتِ فَلَلْتِ	أَنْتُمَا فَلَلْتُمَا	أَنْتِ فَلَلْتِ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ فَلَلْنَا		أَنَا فَلَلْتُ	Both

Past Tense – the Shadda is dropped from هُنَّ version onwards – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done – the hidden Harakat on the 2nd Root Letter (Fatah) returns

Example for Past Tense Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ using ظ ن ن

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
--------------------	--------	------	----------	--------

Third Person	هُم ظَنُّوا They all assumed	هُمَا ظَنَّا Both of them assumed (Men)	هُوَ ظَنَّ He assumed	Masculine
Third Person	هِنَّ ظَنَّ They all assumed (Women)	هُمَا ظَنَّتَا Both of them assumed (Women)	هِيَ ظَنَّتْ She assumed	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ ظَنْنْتُمْ All of You assumed	أَنْتُمَا ظَنْنْتُمَا Both of you assumed (Men)	أَنْتَ ظَنْنْتَ You assumed (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتِنَّ ظَنْنُنَّ All of You assumed (Women)	أَنْتُمَا ظَنْنْتُمَا Both of you assumed (Women)	أَنْتِ ظَنْنْتِ You assumed (Woman)	Feminine

First Person	نَحْنُ ظَنَنْتَا We assumed	أَنَا ظَنَنْتُ I assumed	Both
--------------	---	--	------

Sub Family 1 – Present Tense Chart - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَفْعُلُونَ	هُمَا يَفْعُلَانِ	هُوَ يَفْعُلُ	Masculine

Third Person	هِنَّ يَفْلُنَّ	هُمَا تَفْلَانِ	هِيَ تَفْلُ	Feminine
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْلُونِ	أَنْتُمَا تَفْلَانِ	أَنْتِ تَفْلُ	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَفْلُنَّ	أَنْتُمَا تَفْلَانِ	أَنْتِ تَفْلَيْنِ	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَفْلُ		أَنَا أَفْلُ	Both

Present Tense - the Shadda is dropped only for **هُنَّ** and **أَنْتِ** versions
 – 2 joined letters separate – and a normal Sarf is done – the hidden Harakat (Dhamma) on the 2nd Root Letter returns (Yellow highlight)

Example for Present Tense Sub Family 1 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** using ظ ن ن

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender
Third Person	هُمْ يَظُنُّونَ They all are assuming	هُمَا يَظُنَّانِ Both of them are assuming (Men)	هُوَ يَظُنُّ He is assuming	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يَظْنُنَّ They all are assuming (Women)	هُمَا تَظُنَّانِ Both of them are assuming (Women)	هِيَ تَظُنُّ She assuming	Feminine

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَظُنُّونَ All of You are assuming	أَنْتُمَا تَظُنَّانِ Both of you are assuming (Men)	أَنْتَ تَظُنُّ You are assuming (Man)	Masculine
Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ تَظُنُّنَّ All of You are assuming (Women)	أَنْتُمَا تَظُنَّانِ Both of you are assuming (Women)	أَنْتِ تَظُنِّينَ You are assuming (Woman)	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ نَظُنُّ We are assuming		أَنَا أَظُنُّ I am assuming	Both

Making Moodaarefun Light and Lightest

Making it Light

Same rules apply as normal

1. If Fi'l ends with Dhamma change it to Fatah
2. If Fi'l ends with ن in ending combination words – remove the ن

Making it Lightest

1. If Fi'l ends with Dhamma – there are 3 versions (just like the Commanding and Forbidding Forms):
 - 1st Form: The last letter takes a Fatah and keeps the Shadda
 - 2nd Form: The last letter takes a Kasra and keeps the Shadda
 - 3rd Form: The Shadda is dropped – the two letters separate and a normal Sarf is done
2. If Fi'l ends with ن in ending combination words – remove the ن

Light and Lightest Present Tense Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender

Third Person	هُمْ يَفْلُؤْنَ Light: يَفْلُؤُوا Lightest: يَفْلُؤُوا	هُمَا يَفْلَاَنِ Light: يَفْلَاَّ Lightest: يَفْلَاَّ	هُوَ يَفْلُُّ Light: يَفْلُِّ Lightest: يَفْلُِّ يَفْلُِّ يَفْلُِّلْ	Masculine
Third Person	هُنَّ يَفْلُنْنَ Light: يَفْلُنْنَ Lightest: يَفْلُنْنَ	هُمَا تَفْلَانِ Light: تَفْلَاَّ Lightest: تَفْلَاَّ	هِيَ تَفْلُُّ Light: تَفْلُِّ Lightest: تَفْلُِّ تَفْلُِّ	Feminine

			تَفْلُنْ	
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْلُونْ Light: تَفْلُوا Lightest: تَفْلُوا	أَنْتُمْ تَفْلَانِ Light: تَفْلَا Lightest: تَفْلَا	أَنْتَ تَفْلُ Light: تَفْلَ Lightest: تَفْلَ تَفْلَ تَفْلُ	Masculine

Second Person	أَنْتِ تَقُلْنَ Light: تَقُلْنَ Lightest: تَقُلْنَ	أَنْتُمَا تَقُلَانِ Light: تَقُلَا Lightest: تَقُلَا	أَنْتِ تَقُلِينَ Light: تَقُلِي Lightest: تَقُلِي	Feminine	
First Person	نَحْنُ نَقُلُ Light: نَقُلْ Lightest: نَقُلْ نَقُلْ نَقُلْ نَقُلْ			أَنَا أَقُلُّ Light: أَقُلِّ Lightest: أَقُلِّ أَقُلِّ أَقُلِّ أَقُلُّ	Both

NOTE: as per usual – the هُنَّ and أَنْتِ – look the same in all 3 forms:
Normal, Light and Lightest (Yellow highlight)

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Example of Light and Lightest Present Tense Sub Family 1

using ظ ن ن

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third Person	هُمْ	هُمَا	هُوَ
	يَظُنُّونَ	يَظُنَّانِ	يَظُنُّ
	Light:	Light:	Light:
	يَظْنُوْ	يَظْنَا	يَظْنُ
	Lightest:	Lightest:	Lightest:
	يَظْنُوْ	يَظْنَا	يَظْنُ يَظْنُ يَظْنُ

Third Person	هَنَّ يَظُنُّنَ Light: يَظُنُّنَ Lightest: يَظُنُّنَ	هُمَا تَظُنَّانِ Light: تَظُنَّا Lightest: تَظُنَّا	هِيَ تَظُنُّ Light: تَظُنَّ Lightest: تَظُنَّ تَظُنَّ تَظُنُّ
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَظُنُّونَ Light: تَظُنُّوْ Lightest: تَظُنُّوْ	أَنْتُمَا تَظُنَّانِ Light: تَظُنَّا Lightest: تَظُنَّا	أَنْتَ تَظُنُّ Light: تَظُنَّ Lightest: تَظُنَّ تَظُنَّ

			تَظُنُّ
Second Person	أَنْتُ تَظُنُّ Light: تَظُنُّ Lightest: تَظُنُّ	أَنْتُمَا تَظُنَّانِ Light: تَظُنَّا Lightest: تَظُنَّا	أَنْتِ تَظُنِّي Light: تَظُنِّي Lightest: تَظُنِّي
First Person	نَحْنُ نَظُنُّ Light: نَظُنُّ Lightest: نَظُنُّ		أَنَا أَظُنُّ Light: أَظُنُّ Lightest: أَظُنُّ

	نَظُنُّ نَظْنُ	أَظُنُّ أَظْنُ
--	-------------------	-------------------

Commanding and Forbidding Versions

Same rule as making it in the Lightest Form:

3. If Fi'l ends with Dhamma – there are 3 versions:
 - 1st Form: The last letter takes a Fatah and keeps the Shadda
 - 2nd Form: The last letter takes a Kasra and keeps the Shadda
 - 3rd Form: The Shadda is dropped – the two letters separate and a normal Sarf is done
4. If Fi'l ends with ن in ending combination words – remove the ن

Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعُلُونِ Commanding Form = فُتُّوا Forbidding Form = لَا تَفْعُلُوا	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Commanding Form = فُلَا Forbidding Form = لَا تَفْعَلَا	أَنْتَ تَفْعُلْ Commanding Form = فُلْ فُلْ أَفْعِلْ Forbidding Form = لَا تَفْعُلْ لَا تَفْعُلْ لَا تَفْعِلْ

Second Person	أَنْتُ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ
	تَفُلِّلَنَّ	تَفُلِّلَانِ	تَفُلِّلِي
	Commanding Form =	Commanding Form =	Commanding Form =
	أَفْلُلَنَّ	فُلَّا	فُلِّي
	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =
	لا تَفُلِّلَنَّ	لا تَفُلِّلَا	لا تَفُلِّلِي

فَعَلَ - Example of Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 1 -
 يَفْعُلُ using ظ ن ن - to assume

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَظُنُّونَ Commanding Form = ظُنُّوْ Forbidding Form = لَا تَظُنُّوْ	أَنْتُمَا تَظُنَّانِ Commanding Form = ظُنَّا Forbidding Form = لَا تَظُنَّا	أَنْتَ تَظُنُّ Commanding Form = ظَنَّ ظَنْ أَظُنُّ You (man) assume! Forbidding Form = لَا تَظَنَّ لَا تَظَنْ لَا تَظُنُّ You (man) do not assume!
---------------	---	--	---

Second Person	أَنْتُ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتِ
	تَظُنُّنَ	تَظُنَّانِ	تَظُنِّيْنَ
	Commanding Form =	Commanding Form =	Commanding Form =
	أُظُنُّنَ	ظُنَّا	ظُنِّيْ
	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =	Forbidding Form =
	لَا تَظُنُّنَ	لَا تَظُنَّا	لَا تَظُنِّيْ

فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 2

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular

Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفِلُّونَ Commanding Form = فُلُّوا Forbidding Form = لَا تَفِلُّوا	أَنْتُمَا تَفِلَّانِ Commanding Form = فَلَّا Forbidding Form = لَا تَفِلَّا	أَنْتِ تَفِلِّي Commanding Form = فَلِّ فِلِّ إِفْلِلِ Forbidding Form = لَا تَفِلِّي لَا تَفِلِّي لَا تَفْلِلِي
Second Person	أَنْتِ تَفِلِّينَ Commanding Form =	أَنْتُمَا تَفِلَّانِ Commanding Form =	أَنْتِ تَفِلِّيْنِ Commanding Form =

	إِفْلِنَ	فَلَا	فَلْيَ
	Forbidding Form = لا تَفْلِنَ	Forbidding Form = لا تَفْلَا	Forbidding Form = لا تَفْلِي

فَعَلَ - Example of Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 2
 using ف ر ر - to flee يَفْعَلُ

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفِرُّونَ Commanding Form =	أَنْتُمَا تَفِرَّانِ Commanding Form =	أَنْتَ تَفِرُّ Commanding Form =

	فِرُّوْ Forbidding Form = لا تَفِرُّوْ	فِرَّا Forbidding Form = لا تَفِرَّا	فِرَّ فِرِّ اِفِرِّ You (man) flee! Forbidding Form = لا تَفِرِّ لا تَفِرِّ لا تَفِرِّ You (man) do not flee!
	Second Person أَنْتُمْ تَفِرُّنَ Commanding Form = اِفِرُّنَ Forbidding Form	أَنْتُمَا تَفِرَّانِ Commanding Form = فِرَّا Forbidding	أَنْتِ تَفِرِّيْنَ Commanding Form = فِرِّيْ Forbidding

	=	Form =	Form =
	لا تَفْرِزْنَ	لا تَفِرَّا	لا تَفِرِّيْ

فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 3

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَفْعُلُونَ Commanding Form = فَعُلُوا Forbidding Form	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Commanding Form = فَلاَّ Forbidding Form =	أَنْتَ تَفْعُلُ Commanding Form = فَلاَ Forbidding Form

	= لا تَفْعُلُوا	لا تَفْعَلْ	إِفْعَلْ Forbidding Form = لا تَفْعَلْ لا تَفْعَلْ لا تَفْعَلْ
Second Person	أَنْتَ تَفْعَلْنَ Commanding Form = إِفْعَلْنَ Forbidding Form = لا تَفْعَلْنَ	أَنْتُمَا تَفْعَلَانِ Commanding Form = فَلَا Forbidding Form = لا تَفْعَلَا	أَنْتِ تَفْعَلِينَ Commanding Form = فَلْيَ Forbidding Form = لا تَفْعَلِي

فَعَلَ - Example of Command and Forbidding Forms for Sub Family 3

يَفْعَلُ using م س س – to touch

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ تَمْسُونِ Commanding Form = مَسُّوْ Forbidding Form = لَا تَمْسُوْ	أَنْتُمَا تَمْسَانِ Commanding Form = مَسَّا Forbidding Form = لَا تَمَسَّا	أَنْتَ تَمْسُ Commanding Form = مَسَّ مَسَّ إِمْسَسْ You (man) touch! Forbidding Form = لَا تَمَسَّ لَا تَمَسَّ

			لَا تَمَسَّسْ You (man) do not touch!
Second Person	أَنْتُ تَمَسَّسْ Commanding Form = إِمَسَّسْ Forbidding Form = لَا تَمَسَّسْ	أَنْتُمَا تَمَسَّسَا Commanding Form = مَسَّا Forbidding Form = لَا تَمَسَّا	أَنْتِ تَمَسَّسِي Commanding Form = مَسِّي Forbidding Form = لَا تَمَسِّي

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Four Letter Roots - الْفِعْلُ الرَّبَاعِيُّ

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

Most Arabic words have 3 Root Letters

Some rare Fi'l have 4 Root Letters

2 Types:

1. Past Tense has no extra letters (Small Families 4 Root Letters) -

رُبَاعِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ

2. Past Tense has extra letters (Big Families 4 Root Letters) - رُبَاعِيٌّ

مَزِيدٌ فِيهِ

Small Families with 4 Root Letters

رُبَاعِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ

Only 1 Family occurs in the Quran

Small Family with 4 Root Letters

For memorization the ف ل ر ع Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعِّلٌ	N/A	يُفَعِّلُ	فَعَّلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعَّلٌ	N/A	يُفَعَّلُ	فُعِّلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
N/A	مُفَعِّلٌ	لا تُفَعِّلُ	فَعِّلْ

--	--	--	--

Example of Small Family with 4 Root Letters using ب ع ث ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُبَعِّرٌ	بَعَثَرَةً	يُبَعِّرُ	بَعَثَرَ
The one who is scattering	To scatter	He is scattering	He scattered
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُبَعَّرٌ	بَعَثَرَةً	يُبَعَّرُ	بُعِثِرَ
The thing that is scattered	To scatter	It is being scattered	It was scattered

Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
N/A	مُبَعَثَرٌ	لَا تُبَعَثَرُ	بَعَثَرُ
Tool for scattering	Time and Place of scattering	You (Male) don't scatter!	You (Male) scatter!

Big Families with 4 Root Letters

رُبَاعِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ

Only 1 Family occurs in the Quran

Big Family with 4 Root Letters

For memorization the ر ل ع ف Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعِّلٌ	إِفْعِلْرَارًا	يَفْعَلِرُّ	إِفْعَلَّرَ

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعَلَرٌ	إِفْعِلْرَارًا	يُفْعَلَرُ	أُفْعِلِرَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفْعَلَرٌ		لا تَفْعَلِرَ لا تَفْعَلِرْ لا تَفْعَلِرُ	إِفْعَلِرْ إِفْعَلِرْ إِفْعَلِرْ

Example of Big Family with 4 Root Letters using ق ش ع ر

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	--------------------	-----------------

مُقَشَعِرٌّ	إِقْشَعْرَارًا	يُقَشَعِرُّ	إِقْشَعَرَ
The one who is shivering	To shiver	He is shivering	He shivered
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُقَشَعِرٌّ	إِقْشَعْرَارًا	يُقَشَعِرُّ	أُقْشَعِرُّ
The one who is made to shiver	To shiver	He is being made to shiver	He was made to shiver
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُقَشَعِرٌّ		لا تَقْشَعِرُّ لا تَقْشَعِرُّ لا تَقْشَعِرْزُ	إِقْشَعِرُّ إِقْشَعِرُّ إِقْشَعِرْزُ
Time and Place of shivering		You (Male) don't shiver!	You (Male) shiver!

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Using a Dictionary

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

There are many Arabic dictionaries available for looking up the meanings of words and the Family to which a Fi'l belongs as well as other things.

Most Arabic dictionaries will require the 3 Root Letters of the word being searched.

The following is an example of a website which contains many Arabic dictionaries and how it can be used to search Arabic words:

<https://ejtaal.net/>

projects hosted on ejtaal.net

Arabic language resources

- **Arabic Almanac (Powered by Mawrid reader)** *** new ***
Allows searching in Hans Wehr, Lane's Lexicon and J. G. Hava all on a single page, 20 root based arabic dictionaries in 6 different languages.
- **Mawrid Reader - al-Mawrid et al** *** new ***
Allows searching in al-Mawrid and Lughat al Quran.
- **Mabhat al Talib - Lisan al Arab et al** *** new ***
Allows searching in text based dictionaries. Still in beta development at present.
- **Find the nearest HMC outlet with this HMC Map App** *** last updated 2012/9/1 ***
- **Hidayat in Nahw**
A summary of Arabic grammar that I prepared as part of course work.
- **Various Resources**

Astronomy

- **Fly through the stars in your browser (based on GAIA DR3 data)** *** new ***

Infosec

- A partial walkthrough of the bWAPP Bee-box
- A walkthrough of the Lord of the Root VM

Programming

- Github repos
- Google Street View Time Lapse videos

Misc

- My collection of funny slashdot comments
- What's in a hacker's home?
- various documents and howtos
- various binary files
- Thought provoking quotes

Email: ejtaal at gmail dot com

Created with

Powered by

Electrons

Best viewed with

Links Opera

Firefox

Select "Arabic Almanac"

Menu About Column [---] Search

Arabic Almanac v6.1 - powered by Mawrid Reader v3.1 | Viewing mode: Desktop (full page).

1. Hans Wehr 4th ed. (hw4) hide

Hans Wehr 4th ed., page 1 of 1303

a particle introducing direct and indirect questions; **أَمْ** — **a** — **am** (also **أَمْ** — **a** — **am** *anna*) whether — or (alternative questions); **أَمْ** — **سَوَاءٌ** *sawāʿun a — am* no matter whether — or; **a-wa** particle indicating or implying doubt: or? perhaps? **أَوْتَشْكُ** *(tašukku)* you wouldn't doubt it, would you? do you perhaps doubt it? or do you doubt it? **أَلَا** *a-lā* and **أَمَّا** *a-mā* intensifying interjections introducing sentences: verily, truly, indeed, oh yes, etc., **أَلَا فَانظُرُوا** *(fa-nẓurū)* oh, do look! why, look! **أَمَّا أَنَّهُ** *(innahu)* why, he is ...!

آب *āb* August (month; *Syr., Leb., Jord., Ir.*)

آب *al-āb* (*Chr.*) the Father (God)

أَبُو *abū* see **أَب**

أَبَّا *abba* u to long, yearn **إِلَى** *ilā* **وَأَجَانِيهِ** *wa-janihi*

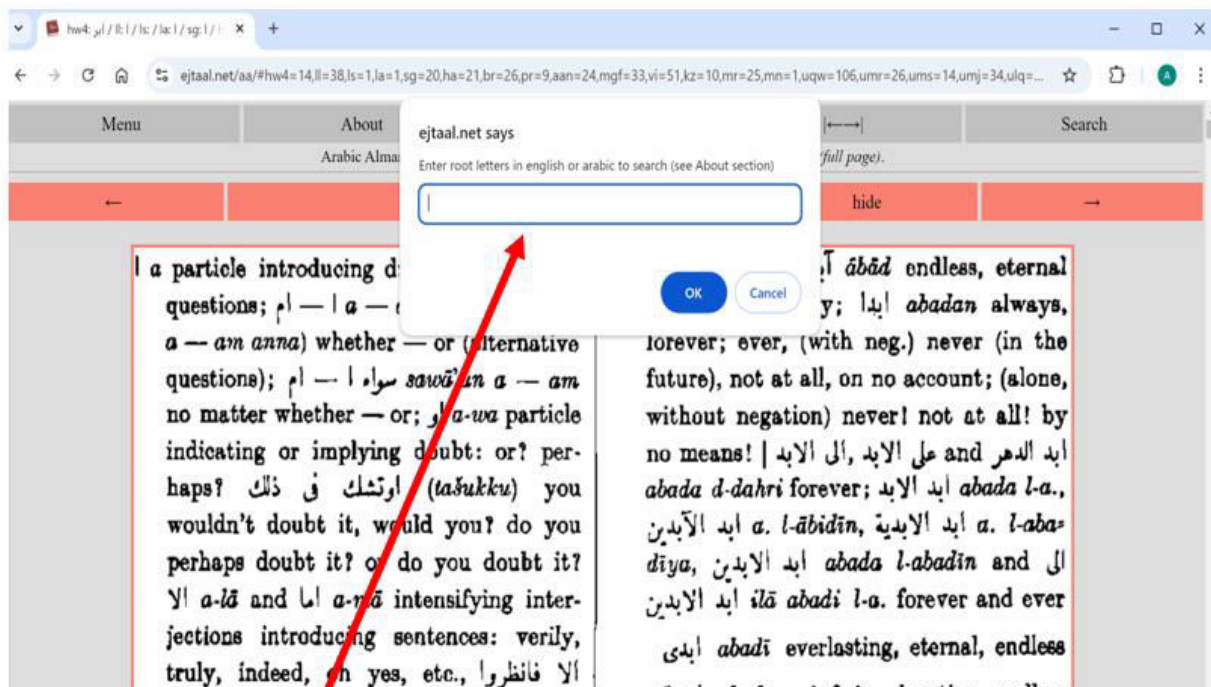
أَبَد *abad* pl. **آبَاد** *ābād* endless, eternal duration, eternity; **أَبَدًا** *abadan* always, forever; ever, (with neg.) never (in the future), not at all, on no account (alone, without negation) never! not at all! by no means! **أَبَدُ الدَّهْرِ** *abada d-dahri* forever; **أَبَدًا** *abada l-a.*, **أَبَدُ الْآبِدِينَ** *a. l-ābidīn*, **أَبَدُ الْآبِدِينَ** *a. l-ābadiyā*, **أَبَدُ الْآبِدِينَ** *abada l-abadīn* and **إِلَى** *ilā* **أَبَدًا** *abadi* forever and ever **أَبَدِي** *abadī* everlasting, eternal, endless **أَبَدِيَّة** *abadīya* infinite duration, endless time, eternity

أَبَد *ābid* resident, nonmigratory (bird); wild, untamed

أَبْدَة *abida* pl. **أَوَابِد** *awābid* unusual thing; prodigious event; resident bird; wild animal; monster **أَوَابِدُ الدُّنْيَا** *a. ad-dunyā* the Wonders of the World

Using Hans Wehr 4th Edition Dictionary (1st one on the list)

Select "Search"



Enter 3 Root Letters of word being searched

Example: to search نصر

Type in ن ص ر

نصر *naṣara u* (*naṣr*, نصر *nuṣūr*) to help, aid, assist (على • s.o. against); to render victorious, let triumph (على • s.o. over; of God); to deliver (من • s.o. from), keep, protect, save II to Christianize, convert to Christianity (• s.o.) III to help, aid, assist, support, defend, protect (• s.o.) V to try to help, seek to support (ل s.o.), stand up for s.o. (ل); to become a Christian VI to render mutual assistance, help each other VIII to come to s.o.'s (ل) aid, be on s.o.'s (ل) side, side with s.o. (ل); to stand up for, maintain (ل s.th., one's opinion); to be victorious; to gain a victory, triumph (على over); to take revenge (من on) X to ask (• s.o.) for assistance

نصار *nāṣir* pl. -ūn, انصار *aṣār*, نصر *nuṣār* helper; protector; granting victory | اخذ بنصره to help s.o.

انصار *aṣār* (pl.) adherents, followers, partisans, sponsors, patrons, friends; الانصار the Medinan followers of Mohammed who granted him refuge after the Hegira

الناصرة *an-nāṣira* Nazareth

ناصرى *nāṣirī* of Nazareth; Nazarene; (pl. -ūn) Nasserist, adherent of Gamāl 'Abd an-Nāṣir, the late President of Egypt

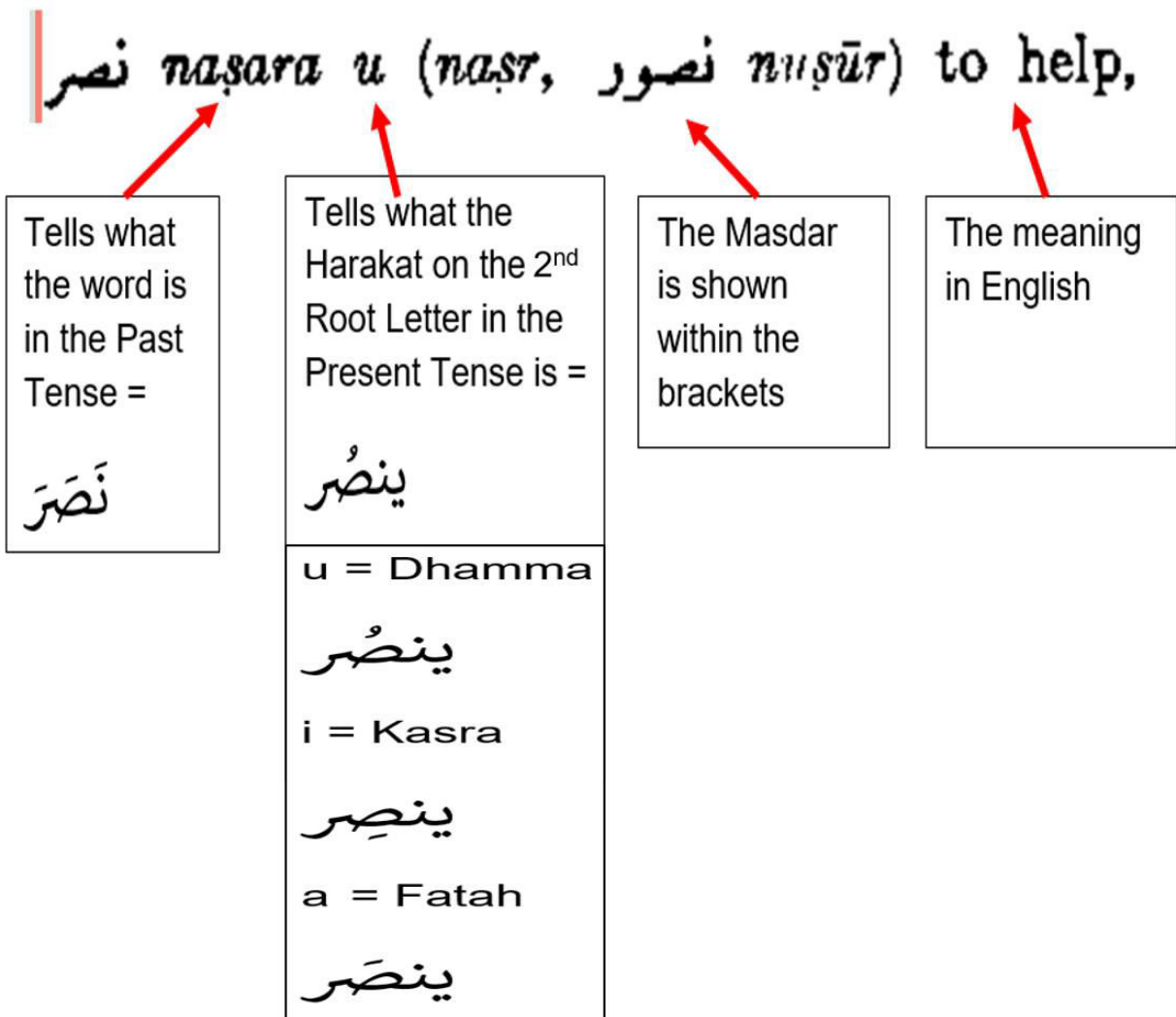
الناصرية *an-nāṣiriyya* Nasserism (see ناصرى)

May have to scroll back and forth a few pages until the correct word is found

Its meanings are discussed when applied to the different families

E.g. Family 2 – means to become a Christian

Family 5 – means to try to help



NOTE: this first line in the dictionary discusses the 3 root letters in the Small Families and the meanings when the 3 root letters are applied to the Big Families are discussed straight after, as explained earlier

Another example using a Fi'l from the Big Families:

Example word: يُسَلِّمُ

This is a Present Tense Fi'l - هُوَ version as يُ at the start and Dhamma at end indicates this

The يُ has a Dhamma at the beginning only in Families 2, 3 and 4

It cannot be from Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ as this Family has a Shadda in it

It cannot be Family 3 - فَاعَلَ يُفَاعِلُ as this Family has an extra Alif added to it

Therefore, must be Family 4 - أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ - أَسْلَمَ يُسَلِّمُ

3 root letters are therefore: س ل م

Inserting these 3 root letters into the Arabic dictionary shown previously:

سلم *salima a* (سلامة *salāma*, سلام *salām*) to be safe and sound, unharmed, unim-

Tells what the word is in the Past Tense =

سَلِمَ

Tells what the Harakat on the 2nd Root Letter in the Present Tense is =

يَسْلَمُ

If the letter in the dictionary is U =
Dhamma

i = Kasra

a = Fataha

The Masdar is shown within the brackets

The meaning in English

But as the word يُسْلِمُ was from the Family 4 – أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ

Need to search for the Family 4 in roman numerals = IV and note down the meaning:

سلم *salima a* (سلامة *salāma*, سلام *salām*) to be safe and sound, unharmed, unimpaired, intact, safe, secure; to be unobjectionable, blameless, faultless; to be certain, established, clearly proven (fact); to be free (من from); to escape (من a danger) II to preserve, keep from injury, protect from harm (• s.o.), save (من • s.o. from); to hand over intact (• s.th., ل or الى to s.o.); to hand over, turn over, surrender (•, • s.o., s.th., ل or الى to s.o.); to deliver (• ل or الى to s.o. s.th.); to lay down (• arms); to surrender, give o.s. up (ل or الى to); to submit, resign o.s. (ل or الى to); to greet, salute (على s.o.); to grant salvation (God to the Prophet); to admit, concede, grant (ب s.th.); to consent (ب to s.th.), approve (ب of s.th.), accept, sanction, condone (ب s.th.) | سلم امره الى الله (*amrahū*) to commit one's cause to God, resign o.s. to the will of God; سلم روحه (*rūḥahū*) to give up the ghost; سلم نفسه الاخير (*naḥasahū*) to breathe one's last, be in the throes of death; سلم نفسه للجوليس (*naḥsahū*) to give o.s. up to the police; سلم الىه على الحسنى والاساءة (*ḥusnā, isā'a*) to put o.s. at s.o.'s mercy; سلم لى عليه (*sallim*) give him my best regards! remember me to him! سلم صلى الله عليه وسلم (*sallā*) God bless him and grant him salvation (eulogy after the name of the Prophet Mohammed) III to keep the peace, make one's peace, make up (• with s.o.) IV to forsake, leave, desert, give up, betray (• s.o.); to let sink, drop (رأسه الى ركبتيه) *ra'sahū i. rukbataihi* one's head to one's knees); to hand over, turn over (الى to s.o., • or • s.o. or s.th.); to leave, abandon (الى • s.th. to s.o.); to deliver up, surrender, expose (الى • s.o. to) → to commit o.s., resign o.s. (لله to the will of God, with

The popular meaning is to surrender/commit to the will of Allah, the Exalted

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Analysis of Some Surahs

Video series link:

https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLt1Vizm7rRKZrtKPBbXLjOrbp24dnmb_n

In order to appreciate understanding Arabic Grammar and how it helps to understand the meaning of the Holy Quran, this chapter will go through some Surahs from the Holy Quran while discussing the different concepts and vocabulary learned in this curriculum.

Surah 114 An Nas

Verse 1: قُلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ النَّاسِ

قُلْ –

Command Form – أَنْتَ version

Present tense هُوَ version is يَقُولُ (He says) - Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun (2nd Root Letter is a vowel)

3 Root Letters are either - ق ي ل or ق و ل - looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ق و ل and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ - يَفْعُلُ -

Therefore - Command Form - "You" masculine أَنْتَ version becomes قُلْ
To determine it is Command form rule out other possibilities:
Cannot be Past Tense Fi'l - too short and Sukoon at the end

Cannot be Present Tense Fi'l - too short and does not start with ت, ي, ا
or ن

Does not follow any Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf or Ism Alatun patterns

Cannot be a Forbidding as no لَا in front of it

So left only with Command Form - Follows pattern of Ajwafun Command Form as well

Meaning: Say! (You Male)

- أَعُوذُ -

Starts with أ and ends with letter with Dhamma - so it is a Present tense Fi'l
Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun

3 Root Letters are either - ع و ذ or ع ي ذ – looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ع و ذ and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ
يَفْعُلُ

Ends with Dhamma = Present Tense

أ at beginning indicates the أَنَا form

Meaning: I seek refuge

– رَبِّ النَّاسِ

Harf of Jar بِ so makes next Ism رَبِّ in Jar Status - the Majroor

The Majroor رَبِّ – is Light and no ال on it so it is a Mudhaf

Second Ism النَّاسِ is the Mudhaf Alai and is in Jar Status
As Mudhaf Alai is Proper - Mudhaf is Proper

Meaning of verse: with the Lord of People

Verse 2: مَلِكِ النَّاسِ

First Ism **مَلِكٍ** is in Jar Status - this Status is carried over from the last verse

It is a Badal of the Eedhafa fragment at the end of Verse 1 **رَبِّ النَّاسِ**

The meaning "also known as" can be inserted between the two verses

This Badal is an Eedhafa fragment as well

The first Ism **مَلِكٍ** is Light and no **ال** on it = Mudhaf

The second Ism **النَّاسِ** is in Jar Status and is the Mudhaf Alai

As Mudhaf Alai is Proper - Mudhaf is Proper

Meaning of verse: the King of People

Verse 3: **إِلَهُ النَّاسِ**

First Ism **إِلَهُ** is in Jar Status - this Status is carried from the last verse

It is a second Badal of the Eedhafa fragment at the end of Verse 1 **رَبِّ النَّاسِ**

The meaning "also known as" can be inserted between the two verses

This Badal is an Eedhafa fragment as well

The first Ism **إِلَهِ** is Light and no **ال** on it = Mudhaf

The second Ism **النَّاسِ** is in Jar Status and is the Mudhaf Alai

As Mudhaf Alai is Proper - Mudhaf is Proper

Meaning of verse: the God of People

Verse 4: **مِنْ شَرِّ الْوَسْوَاسِ الْخَنَّاسِ**

Harf of Jar **مِنْ** (from) - makes **شَرِّ** in Jar Status - the Majroor

The Majroor - **شَرِّ** - is a Mudhaf - Light and no **ال** on it

The next Ism **الْوَسْوَاسِ** is a Mudhaf Alai - in Jar Status - only an Ism can be Mudhaf Alai

The next Ism **الْخَنَّاسِ** - **ال** on it indicates it is an Ism - is also in Jar Status

Also all the other 3 Ism properties (Gender, Number and Type) match between this Ism and previous one (**الْوَسْوَاسِ** - the Mudhaf Alai) = Mawsoof Siffa Fragment

Meaning of verse: From the evil of the retreating whisperer

Verse 5: الَّذِي يُوسَّوسُ فِي صُدُورِ النَّاسِ

The Ism Mawsool الَّذِي is needed so that the Present Tense Fi'l

الْوَسَّاسِ acts as a Siffa (description) for the Ism in verse 4 as this Ism is Proper – if the Ism was Common the Ism Mawsool is not needed

The Ism Mawsool الَّذِي matches in Number and Gender (Single and Masculine) to the Ism الْوَسَّاسِ

As يُوسَّوسُ starts with a ي and ends with a Dhamma - it is a Fi'l in Present tense هُوَ version - Fi'l with Four Root Letters

Meaning: to whisper thoughts to others

Next - Harf of Jar فِي (in) makes next Ism into Jar Status صُدُورِ - the Majroor

The Majroor صُدُورِ is a Mudhaf - Light and no ال on it

Makes next Ism النَّاسِ into Jar Status - the Mudhaf Alai

Meaning of Verse: the one who whispers [evil] into the breasts of mankind

Verse 6: مِنَ الْجِنَّةِ وَالنَّاسِ

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism الْجِنَّةِ into Jar Status - the Majroor

The Harf of Jar مِنْ has a Fatah on it in the verse in order to connect it to the next word for smooth recitation and the ا in ال on the Ism الْجِنَّةِ is ignored as it does not have a Hamza on it. So the Nun on مِنْ connects straight to the Laam on الْجِنَّةِ

The Ataf وَ (and) carries over the Status of the Ism before it الْجِنَّةِ to the Ism after it النَّاسِ - so it is in Jar Status also

Meaning of Verse: From among the jinn and mankind

Surah 113 Al Falaq

Verse 1: قُلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ الْفَلَقِ

قُلْ -

Command Form – أَنْتَ version

Present tense هُوَ version is يَقُولُ (He says) - Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun (2nd Root Letter is a vowel)

3 Root Letters are either - ق ي ل or ق و ل – looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ق و ل and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ – يَفْعُلُ –

Therefore - Command Form – “You” masculine أَنْتَ version becomes قُلْ
To determine it is Command form rule out other possibilities:
Cannot be Past Tense Fi'l - too short and Sukoon at the end

Cannot be Present Tense Fi'l - too short and does not start with ت, ي, ا
or ن

Does not follow any Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf or Ism Alatun patterns

Cannot be a Forbidding as no لَا in front of it

So left only with Command Form - Follows pattern of Ajwafun Command Form as well

Meaning: Say! (You Male)

– اَعُوْذُ

Starts with اَ and ends with letter with Dhamma - so it is a Present tense Fi'l
Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun

3 Root Letters are either - ع و ذ or ع ي ذ – looking both up in the
dictionary shows that it is ع و ذ and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ
يَفْعُلُ

Ends with Dhamma = Present Tense

اَ at beginning indicates the اَنَا form

Meaning: I seek refuge

– رَبِّ الْفَلَقِ

Harf of Jar بِ so makes next Ism رَبِّ in Jar Status - the Majroor

The Majroor رَبِّ - is Light and no ال on it so it is a Mudhaf

Second Ism الْفَلَقِ - has ال so it is an Ism - is the Mudhaf Alai and is in
Jar Status

As Mudhaf Alai is Proper - Mudhaf is Proper

Meaning of Verse: Say! I seek refuge with the Lord of Daybreak

Verse 2: مِنْ شَرِّ مَا خَلَقَ

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism in Jar Status شَرِّ - the Majroor

The Majroor شَرِّ is Light and No ال on it - Mudhaf

The next word مَا is the Mudhaf Alai – it is in Jar Status

The next word خَلَقَ has 3 Root Letters only with all Fatah across - fits the pattern of Past Tense Fi'l of the Small Families - هُوَ version

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Meaning of verse: From the evil of what He created

Verse 3: وَمِنْ شَرِّ غَاسِقٍ إِذَا وَقَبَ

Ataf وَ (and)

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism in Jar Status شَرِّ - the Majroor

The Majroor شَرِّ is Light and No ال on it - Mudhaf

The next Ism غَاسِقٍ is the Mudhaf Alai (only Ism can be Mudhaf Alai) – it is in Jar Status

Next word إِذَا - means “when” - pushes meaning into Future tense

Next word وَقَب has 3 Root Letters only with all Fatah across - fits the pattern of Past Tense Fi'l of the Small Families - هُوَ version

Irregular verb Mithalun (1st root letter is vowel)

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: He/it becomes dark

Meaning of Verse: And from the evil of darkness when it becomes dark/settled

Verse 4: وَمِنْ شَرِّ النَّفْثِ فِي الْعُقَدِ

Ataf وَ (and)

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism in Jar Status - شَرِّ - the Majroor

The Majroor شَرِّ is Light and No ال on it - Mudhaf

The next Ism النَّفْثِ is the Mudhaf Alai – it is in Jar Status

The Ism النَّفْثِ - Harf of Jar only comes with an Ism - has the female plural ending combination اتِ

Meaning: those women who blow

- فِي الْعُقَدِ

Harf of Jar فِي (in) makes next Ism in Jar Status - الْعُقَدِ - the Majroor

Meaning of Verse: And from the evil of the blowers (who blow) in knots

Verse 5: وَمِنْ شَرِّ حَاسِدٍ إِذَا حَسَدَ

Ataf وَ (and)

Harf of Jar مِنْ (from) makes next Ism in Jar Status - شَرِّ - the Majroor

The Majroor شَرِّ is Light and No ال on it - Mudhaf

The next Ism حَاسِدٍ is the Mudhaf Alai (only Ism can be Mudhaf Alai) – it is in Jar Status

Follows the Ism Far'il pattern found in small families فَاعِلٌ

Meaning: the one who is jealous

- إِذَا حَسَدَ

Next word إِذَا - means “when” - pushes meaning into Future Tense

Next word حَسَدَ has 3 Root Letters only with all Fatah across - fits the pattern of Past Tense Fi'l of the Small Families - هُوَ version

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 1 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Meaning: He envied

Meaning of Verse: And from the evil of an envier when he envies

Surah 112 Al Ikhlas

Verse 1: قُلْ هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ

قُلْ –

Command Form – أَنْتَ version

Present tense هُوَ version is يَقُولُ (He says) - Irregular Fi'l Ajwafun (2nd Root Letter is a vowel)

3 Root Letters are either - ق ي ل or ق و ل – looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ق و ل and follows Sub Family 1 Pattern فَعَلَ

يَفْعُلُ –

Therefore - Command Form – “You” masculine أَنْتَ version becomes قُلْ

To determine it is Command form rule out other possibilities:
Cannot be Past Tense Fi'l - too short and Sukoon at the end

Cannot be Present Tense Fi'l - too short and does not start with ت, ي, ا
or ن

Does not follow any Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf or Ism Alatun patterns

Cannot be a Forbidding as no لَا in front of it

So left only with Command Form - Follows pattern of Ajwafun Command Form as well

Meaning: Say! (You Male)

– هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ

Next word هُوَ is an Independent Pronoun meaning “He”

It creates a noun sentence

Break in chain as no grammatical connection between هُوَ and next Ism -

the word اللَّهُ - the word "is" goes in between the two isms

Meaning: He is Allah (SWT)

Next word أَحَدٌ is an Ism

Meaning of Verse: Say, "He is Allāh, [who is] One

Verse 2: اللَّهُ الصَّمَدُ

No grammatical link between two Isms in this Noun Sentence so "is" can be inserted in between

Meaning: Allah (SWT) is the Eternal Refuge

Verse 3: لَمْ يَلِدْ وَلَمْ يُولَدْ

The word لَمْ means "did not" and is one of the words which makes the Present Tense in Lightest form

Next word يَلِدْ is therefore a Fi'l in the Present Tense Lightest form -

Sukoon at the end indicates that - هُوَ version.

Irregular verb Mithalun - 1st root is a vowel

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: He did not give birth

- وَلَمْ يُوَلِّدْ

Ataf وَ (and)

The word لَمْ means "did not" and is one of the words which makes the Present Tense in Lightest form

Next word يُوَلِّدْ is therefore a Fi'l Present tense in Lightest form - Sukoon

at the end indicates that - هُوَ version.

Irregular verb Mithalun - 1st root is a vowel

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

All the Harakat are at the top and Present Tense - which indicates Passive Present Tense Fi'l (doer is unknown)

Meaning: He was not given birth to

Meaning of Verse: He neither begets nor is given birth to

Verse 4: وَلَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ كُفُوًا أَحَدٌ

Ataf وَ (and)

The word لَمْ means "did not" and is one of the words which makes the Present Tense in Lightest form

Next word يَكُنْ is therefore a Fi'l Present tense in Lightest form - Sukoon at the end indicates that - هُوَ version.

Incomplete Verb - كَانَ and sisters

Outside doer (known as the Ism of كَانَ) is أَحَدٌ

Follows rules of Outside Doer:

Matches Fi'l يَكُنْ in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هُوَ or هِيَ versions

Meaning: anyone is not

لَهُ كُفُؤًا أَحَدٌ .

Next word لَهُ is Harf of Jar لَ (for) with Attached pronoun هُ - indicates possession

Meaning: for Him

Next Ism كُفُّوْا

Khabr of كَانَ - so it is in Nasab Status

Meaning: equivalent

Meaning of Verse: Nor is anyone to Him any equivalent

Surah 111 Al Masad

Verse 1: تَبَّتْ يَدَا أَبِي لَهَبٍ وَتَبَّ

First word تَبَّتْ is a Past tense Fi'l in هِيَ version - the ت with a Sukoon at the end indicates that

Irregular verb Moodaarefun - Shadda on ب indicates that

1st Root letter ت

2nd and 3rd Root letters ب

Looking it up in dictionary shows that it is from Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: she/it perished

Outside doer is يَدَا أَبِي لَهَبٍ

The word يَدَا is Feminine because it is a body part in a pair

Follows Outside Doer rules:

Matches Fi'l تَبَّتْ in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هِيَ version

The Ism يَدَا is a Mudhaf - Light no ال - normal version يَدَانِ has the ending combination ان and the ن has been dropped to make it Light

The next Ism أَبِي is Mudhaf Alai and the second Mudhaf

The next Ism لَهَبٍ is the second Mudhaf Alai

Only Isms can be part of the Eedhafa fragment

Meaning: Hands of Abu Lahab have perished - can be considered a supplication too: may the hands of Abu Lahab perish

- وَتَبَّ

Ataf وَ (and) - has a Shadda on it to connect to previous word for smooth recitation

Next word تَبَّ is a Past tense Fi'l in هُوَ version

Irregular verb Moodaarefun - Shadda on ب indicates that

1st Root letter ت

2nd and 3rd Root letters ب

Looking it up in dictionary shows that it is from Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: He perished

Meaning of Verse: May the hands of Abū Lahab perish, and he has perished

Verse 2: مَا أَغْنَىٰ عَنْهُ مَالُهُ وَمَا كَسَبَ

The first word مَا is for negation - only one that makes sense

The next word أَغْنَىٰ is a Past Tense Fi'l - هُوَ version

Irregular verb Naqisun - the ي at the end indicates that

Cannot be Present Tense Fi'l - does not end with Dhamma or ي which is typically seen in Naqis and the أ at the beginning of أَغْنَىٰ cannot be the

أَنَا version in Present tense as the sentence would not make sense

Does not follow any Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf, Ism Alatun or Commanding form patterns

Cannot be a Forbidding as no لَا in front of it

So it is a Past tense Fi'l - Family 4 - which explains the أَ (Hamza) at the start

3 Root Letters are غ ن ي

Looking up in dictionary for Family 4 – meaning is to avail/help

As Fi'l is in هُوَ version - look for outside doer

Outside Doer is مَالُهُ

Follows Outside Doer rules:

Matches Fi'l أَغْنَى in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هُوَ version

Second Outside Doer because of the Ataf مَا كَسَبَ وَ is

The Ataf وَ carries over the Rafa Status and all other outside doer rules followed

مَا كَسَبَ .

The Harf مَا is Ism Mawsool – means “whatever”

The Seelatun Masool is كَسَبَ

The Seelatun Masool كَسَبَ is a Fi'l has 3 root letters and Fatah across

all 3 letters - indicates Past Tense Fi'l - one of the Small Families - هُوَ
version

Looking up in dictionary shows it is Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ

Meaning: whatever he earned

The last word عَنْهُ - is a Harf of Jar عَنْ (from/about) with Attached
Pronoun هُ

Meaning: from him

Meaning of Verse: His wealth nor what he earned will avail/help him

Verse 3: سَيَصْلِي نَارًا ذَاتَ لَهَبٍ

The first word سَيَصْلِي is a Fi'l - Present Tense هُوَ version

The س at the beginning is the Harf which means “soon” and pushes the
Present Tense meaning to the Future Tense

The ي at beginning of the Fi'l يَصْلِي indicates it is a Present Tense

Irregular verb Naqisun - ي at the end indicates that

3 Root Letters are ص ل ي

Looking it up in a dictionary shows it is Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ

Meaning: He will burn

Next Ism نَارًا is Mafool Feehee - answers question where he will be burned
- Nasab Status

Next Isms ذَاتَ لَهَبٍ acts as a Siffa (description) for the previous Ism

نَارًا – so it is Nasab in status

And is a Eedhafa fragment

Mudhaf - ذَاتَ - light and no ال on it

Mudhaf Alai - لَهَبٍ - is in Jar Status

Meaning: a fire, possessor of intense flames

Meaning of Verse: He will [enter to] burn in a fire, possessor of intense flames

Verse 4: وَآمَرَآتُهُ حَمَّالَةَ الْخَطَبِ

Second Outside doer **إِمْرَأَتُهُ** - to the Fi'l **سَيَصِلِي** in verse 3 - because of the Ataf **وَ**

The Ataf **وَ** carries over the Rafa Status and all other Outside Doer rules followed:

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l **سَيَصِلِي** is in **هُوَ** version

Even though the Outside Doer does not Matches Fi'l **سَيَصِلِي** in Gender yet it is acceptable in these rare cases

The Outside Doer **إِمْرَأَتُهُ** - is an Eedhafa fragment

Mudhaf - **إِمْرَأَتُ** - Light and no **ال** on it

Mudhaf Alai - Attached Pronoun **هُ**

Meaning: His wife

- **حَمَّالَةَ الْخَطَبِ**

Next Isms **حَمَّالَةَ الْخَطَبِ** are an Eedhafa Fragment

Act as a Haal for the Ism **وَأَمْرَأَتُهُ** - Nasab in Status

Mudhaf – حَمَّالَةٌ – Light and no ال on it

Mudhaf Alai - الْحَطْبِ - is in Jar Status

Only Isms are part of an Eedhafa fragment

Meaning of Verse: And his wife [as well] - the carrier of firewood

Verse 5: فِي جِيدِهَا حَبْلٌ مِّن مَّسَدٍ

Harf of Jar فِي (in) makes next Ism جِيد into Jar Status - the Majroor (can only be an Ism)

The Majroor جِيد is Mudhaf - Light and no ال on it

Mudhaf Alai - Attached Pronoun هَا

Meaning: in her neck

No grammatical connection between جِيدِهَا and next Ism حَبْلٌ in this Noun sentence - so "is" inserted in between

Meaning: in her neck is a rope

- مِّنْ مَّسَدٍ

Next word is a Harf of Jar مِّنْ (from) - has a Shadda on it to connect to previous Ism حَبْلٌ for smoothness of recitation

Makes next Ism مَّسَدٍ – into Jar Status – the Majroor (only Ism can be a Majroor)

Meaning of Verse: Around her neck is a rope from [twisted] fiber

Surah 110 An Nasr

Verse 1: إِذَا جَاءَ نَصْرُ اللَّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ

First word إِذَا means “when” and creates conditional statement – it pushes the meaning into the Future Tense - even when a Past Tense Fi'l has been used and has no grammatical effect on other words

Next word جَاءَ is a Past Tense Fi'l - هُوَ version

Irregular verb combination of Mahmuzun – when one of the root letters is Hamza - and Ajwafun – when 2nd root letter is a vowel

3 Root Letters are either - ج ي ء or ج و ء – looking both up in the dictionary shows that it is ج ي ء and follows Sub Family 2 Pattern فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

Meaning: He/it came (because of the conditional statement meaning becomes: when he/it will come)

As Past Tense Fi'l جَاءَ is in - هُوَ version - look for Outside Doer

Outside Doer is نَصْرُ اللَّهِ

Follows the rules of an Outside Doer:

Matches Fi'l جَاءَ in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هُوَ version

The Outside Doer is an Eedhafa fragment

Mudhaf - نَصْرُ - Light and no ال on it

Mudhaf Alai - (the word) اللَّهُ - it is in Jar Status

Meaning: when the help of Allah (SWT) comes

- وَالْفَتْحُ

Second Outside Doer جَاءَ - the Ataf (and) to the Past tense Fi'l الْفَتْحُ

carries the Rafa Status over from the first Outside Doer نَصَرَ اللَّهُ

Follows the rules of an Outside Doer:

Matches Fi'l جَاءَ in Gender

Comes after Fi'l

Is in Rafa Status

Fi'l is in هُوَ version

Meaning of Verse: When the victory of Allāh and the conquest comes

Verse 2: وَرَأَيْتَ النَّاسَ يَدْخُلُونَ فِي دِينِ اللَّهِ أَفْوَاجًا

Ataf (and) carries over the conditional statement made in the verse 1

Next word رَأَيْتَ is a Fi'l Past Tense - أَنْتَ version - Sukoon on second to

last letter ي followed by ت with a Fatah on it indicates this

Irregular verb combination Naqisun – 3rd Root Letter is a vowel – and

Mahmuzun – when one of the root letters is a ع

Cannot be a Present Tense Fi'l- does not begin with ن or ت - ي - ا

Does not follow pattern of other words: Masdar, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf or Ism Alatun either

3 Root Letters are: ر ء ي

Meaning: You saw (but because of conditional statement from previous verse being carried over meaning is pushed into future tense - when you see)

The next word النَّاسِ is the Mafool Beehee - answers questions what do you see - Nasab Status

Meaning: the people

– يَدْخُلُونَ فِي دِينِ اللَّهِ أَفْوَاجًا

Rest of verse up to the word اللَّهُ is Mafool Haal - answers question in what state to you see the people in - entire thing is in Nasab Status

Within Mafool Haal –

Next word يَدْخُلُونَ is Fi'l Present Tense - هُمْ version - the ي at the beginning and the ending combination وَنَ at the end indicates this

The Present tense هُوَ version is therefore يَدْخُلُ

3 Root Letters are: د خ ل

Meaning: they enter (“they” refers to the people mentioned directly before)

Next is the Harf of Jar **فِي** (in) and makes next Ism **دِينَ** in Jar Status - the Majroor (only an Ism can be a Majroor)

The Majroor **دِينَ** - is Light and no **ال** - Mudhaf

The Mudhaf Alai is (the word) **اللَّهِ** - it is in Jar Status

The last Ism **أَفْوَاجًا** is another Mafool Haal - Answers the question in what state do they enter - Nasab Status

It is Heavy and does not follow any Fi'l pattern – therefore it must be an Ism

Meaning of Verse: And you see the people entering into the religion of Allāh in multitudes.

Verse 3: **فَسَبِّحْ بِحَمْدِ رَبِّكَ وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ ۚ إِنَّهُ كَانَ تَوَّابًا**

The Harf **فَ** (then) is often placed between the Condition and the Response of the Condition when the two are different

In this case the Condition in verse 1 was connected to a Past Tense Fi'l and in this verse the Response of the Condition is connected to a Command Form

Next word **أَنْتَ - فَعَلْ يُفَعِّلُ - سَبِّحْ** is in Command form - Family 2 -

version

The Shaada indicates it is Family 2 and the Sukoon indicates Commanding

Form also

It does not follow the pattern of Present Tense, Past Tense, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf, Forbidding form and therefore it is Commanding form

3 Root Letters: س ب ح

Meaning: You (male) glorify!

Next word بِحَمْدٍ is a Har of Jar Fragment

Har of Jar بِ (with) makes next Ism حَمْدٍ in Jar Status - the Majroor (only an Ism can be a Majroor)

The Majroor حَمْدٍ is Light and no ال on it - Mudhaf

The next Ism رَبِّ - is Mudhaf Alai and is the next Mudhaf - Light and no ال

The Mudhaf Alai in رَبِّكَ is the Attached Pronoun كَ – meaning “you”

Meaning: You glorify! with the praise of your Lord

– وَاسْتَغْفِرْهُ إِنَّهُ كَانَ تَوَّابًا

Next Harf is Ataf وَ (and)

Next word اسْتَغْفِرْهُ is a Command Form - Family 10 - اسْتَفْعَلَ

يَسْتَفْعِلُ - أَنْتَ version

The **اِسْتِ** at the beginning indicates it is Family 10 and Sukoon on the

last letter **ر** indicates Commanding form also

It does not follow the pattern of Present Tense, Past Tense, Ism Far'il, Ism Mafool, Zharf, Forbidding form and therefore it is Commanding form

3 Root Letters: **ر ف غ**

Meaning: You (male) seek forgiveness!

Next is an Attached Pronoun **هُ** which is Mafool Beehee - answers the question who to seek forgiveness from

Meaning: You (male) seek forgiveness of Him!

اِنَّهٗ كَانَ تَوَّابًا

Harf of Nasab **اِنَّ** (certainly) with its Ism **هُ** - Attached Pronoun – meaning “He”

Next word **كَانَ** is an Incomplete Verb - **هُوَ** version
Meaning: He was

Next word **تَوَّابًا** is the Khabr of the Incomplete Verb **كَانَ** - which is Nasab in Status

Meaning: Certainly, He was (always) accepting of repentance

Meaning of Verse: Then exalt with the praise of your Lord and ask forgiveness of Him. Indeed, He was (always) accepting of repentance

NOTE: It is vital to become familiar with the [Vocabulary List](#) chapter at the end of this book. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied.

Vocabulary List

It is vital to become familiar with this Vocabulary List chapter. This should be reviewed regularly, ideally at the end of every session this curriculum is studied. The Table of Contents Sidebar should be utilized in order to switch between tabs within the Vocabulary List chapter as well as the relevant chapters throughout the book.

Nouns

General Isms

Isim	Meaning	Isim	Meaning
آيَةٌ - Single آيَاتٌ - Plural	Sign	بَيِّنَةٌ - Single بَيِّنَاتٌ - Plural	Clear evidence
جَبَلٌ - Single جِبَالٌ - Plural	Mountain	أَنْعَامٌ	Cattle

بَحْرٌ	Sea	شَمْسٌ	Sun
قَمَرٌ	Moon	لَيْلٌ	Nighttime
نَهَارٌ	Daytime	لَيْلَةٌ - Single لَيَالٍ - Plural	Night
يَوْمٌ - Single أَيَّامٌ - Plural	Day	أَرْضٌ	Earth
سَّمَاءٌ - Single سَمَآوَاتٌ - Plural	Sky	رَسُولٌ - Single رُسُلٌ - Plural	Messenger
نَبِيٌّ - Single أَنْبِيَاءٌ - Plural	Prophet	أَجْرٌ - Single أُجُورٌ - Plural	Reward
شَيْطَانٌ - Single شَيَاطِينُ - Plural	Satan	أَعْلٌ	Term a time

الْآخِرَةُ	The hereafter	ثَوَابٌ جَزَاءٌ	Reward
جَنَّةٌ - Single جَنَّاتٍ - Plural	Garden	جَحِيمٌ جَهَنَّمَ	Hellfire
حِسَابٌ	Reckoning	سَاعَةٌ	Hour (the Day of Judgement)
صَاحِبٌ - Single أَصْحَابٌ - Plural	Companion	عَاقِبَةٌ	The final outcome
عَذَابٌ عِقَابٌ	Punishment	قِيَامَةٌ	Day of Standing (Day of Judgement)
لِقَاءٌ	Meeting	مُسَمًّى	Fixed
نَارٌ	Fire	نَهْرٌ - Single	River

		أَنَّهُرُ - Plural	
وَيْلٌ	Destruction for...	يَوْمَئِذٍ	On that day
إِلَهٌ - Single آِلِهَةٌ - Plural	God	شَرِيكٌ - Single شُرَكَاءُ - Plural	Partner
شَهَادَةٌ - Single شُهُودٌ - Plural	Witness	عَرْشٌ	Throne
عَهْدٌ مِيثَاقٌ	Promise/Covenant	غَيْبٌ	Unseen
كِتَابٌ - Single كُتُبٌ - Plural	Book	كَلِمَةٌ	Word
مَلَكٌ - Single مَلَائِكَةٌ - Plural	Angel	مَلِكٌ	King

أَمْرٌ – Single أُمُورٌ - Plural	Matter/Situation	مَلِكٌ	King
حَقٌّ	Right/Truth	تَقْوَى	Fearing Allah (SWT)/Piety
حِكْمَةٌ	Wisdom	حَمْدٌ	Praise
دِينٌ	Religion/Way of life	زَكَاةٌ	Obligatory charity
صَلَاةٌ	Prayer	نُورٌ	Light
آلَاءِ	Favours	سَلْطَانٌ	Authority
فَضْلٌ نِعْمَةٌ	Favour/Bounty	مَاءٌ	Water
مُلْكٌ	Kingdom	بَأْسٌ	Punishment
جَمِيعٌ	All together	سَوَاءٌ	Equal

فَرِيقٌ	Party/Group	عَمَلٌ – Single أَعْمَالٌ - Plural	Action
سَيِّئَةٌ – Single سَيِّئَاتٌ - Plural	Bad Deed	حَسَنَةٌ – Single حَسَنَاتٌ - Plural	Good deed
إِثْمٌ	Sin	ذَنْبٌ	Error
حَرَامٌ	Unlawful	إِسْمٌ – Single أَسْمَاءٌ - Plural	Name
حَدِيثٌ	Speech/New event	طَيِّبَةٌ – Single طَيِّبَاتٌ - Plural	Pure/Good
نَفْسٌ – Single أَنْفُسٌ - Plural	Soul	رُوحٌ	Soul/Spirit
زَوْجٌ – Single	Pair/Spouse	رَجُلٌ – Single	Man

أَزْوَاجٌ - Plural		رِجَالٌ - Plural	
إِمْرَأَةٌ - Single	Woman	وَلَدٌ - Single	Child
نِسَاءٌ - Plural		أَوْلَادٌ - Plural	
وَالِدٌ	Father	أُمٌّ - Single	Mother
أَبٌ		أُمّهَاتٌ - Plural	
- Single			
آبَاءٌ - Plural			
ذُرِّيَّةٌ	Offspring/Descendants	إِبْنٌ - Single	Son
		بَنُونَ - Plural	
أَخٌ - Single	Brother	إِبْنٌ - Single	Son
إِخْوَانٌ - Plural		بَنُونَ - Plural	
أَخٌ - Single	Brother	إِبْنٌ - Single	Son

إِخْوَانٌ - Plural		بَنُونَ - Plural	
أُخْتُ - Single أَخَوَاتٌ - Plural	Sister	بِنْتُ - Single بَنَاتٌ - Plural	Daughter
أُمَّةٌ - Single أُمَمٌ - Plural	Nation/Community	قَوْمٌ	People
إِنْسَانٌ - Single نَاسٌ - Plural	Human	ذَكَرٌ - Single ذُكُورٌ - Plural	Male
أَنْثَى - Single إِنَاثٌ - Plural	Female	عَبْدٌ - Single عِبَادٌ - Plural	Slave
عَدُوٌّ - Single أَعْدَاءٌ - Plural	Enemy	كَافِرٌ - Single كُفَّارٌ - Plural	Disbelievers

مُجْرِمٌ	Criminal	مَلَأُ	Chiefs/Leaders
وَلِيٌّ – Single أَوْلِيَاءُ – Plural	Friend/Protector	بَيْتٌ – Single بُيُوتٌ – Plural	House
دَارٌ – Single دِيَارٌ – Plural	Abode/Home	دُنْيَا	World
سَبِيلٌ – Single سُبُلٌ – Plural	Path	صِرَاطٌ	Path
عَالَمٌ – Single عَالَمِينَ – Plural	World	فِتْنَةٌ	Trial
قَرْيَةٌ – Single قُرَى – Plural	Village/Town	مَالٌ – Single أَمْوَالٌ – Plural	Wealth
مَتَاعٌ	Provision	مَسْجِدٌ – Single	Mosque

		مَسَاجِدُ - Plural	
مَكَانٌ - Single	Place		

Ism Siffa – Descriptions

Ism	Meaning	Ism	Meaning
أَوَّلٌ - Masculine أُولَى - Feminine	First	حَمِيمٌ	Close friend
آخِرٌ - Masculine آخِرَةٌ - Feminine	Last	خَبِيرٌ	Aware

آخر - Masculine أُخْرَى - Feminine	Other	سَمِيعٌ	The one who listens
أَمِينٌ	Trustworthy	شَكُورٌ	Grateful
بَصِيرٌ	The one who sees	عَزِيزٌ	Mighty
كَرِيمٌ	Noble/Generous	غَفُورٌ	The forgiver
تَوَّابٌ	Repeatedly Forgiving	قَدِيرٌ	The powerful
حَفِيزٌ	Protector	نَذِيرٌ	The warner
حَكِيمٌ	Wise	نَصِيرٌ	The helper
حَلِيمٌ	Forbearing	وَكَيلٌ	The one who manages affairs
حَمِيدٌ	Praiseworthy	شَدِيدٌ	The strong
عَلِيٌّ	The high	عَلِيمٌ	The knower
كَبِيرٌ	Big	كَثِيرٌ	Plenty
رَحِيمٌ	Merciful	عَظِيمٌ	Supreme

Ism Tafdeel – Comparatives

Ism	Meaning	Ism	Meaning
أَشَدُّ	More severe	أَعْلَمُ	More knowing
أَعْلَى	More higher	أَقْرَبُ	Closer
أكْبَرُ	Bigger	أَكْثَرُ	More
أَحْسَنُ	Better	أَحَقُّ	More entitled
أَذْنَى	Less	أَظْلَمُ	More unjust
أَهْدَى	Better guided	أَوْلَى	Nearer

Ism Charts

Masculine Chart

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنُونَ	مُؤْمِنَانِ	مُؤْمِنٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنِينَ	مُؤْمِنَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنٌ	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنِينَ	مُؤْمِنَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Feminine Chart

Plural	Dual	Singular	Status
مُؤْمِنَاتُ	مُؤْمِنَتَانِ	مُؤْمِنَةٌ	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنَةٌ	نَصْبٌ - Nasab
مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	مُؤْمِنَتَيْنِ	مُؤْمِنَةٍ	جَرٌّ - Jar

Independent and Attached Pronoun Chart

Grammatical Person	Plural	Dual	Singular	Gender

Third Person	هُم	هُمَا	هُوَ	Masculine
	Attached Pronouns	Attached Pronouns	Attached Pronouns	
	هُم هِم They	هُمَا هِمَا Both of them	هُ هِ He/It	
Third Person	هُنَّ	هُمَا	هِيَ	Feminine
	Attached Pronouns	Attached Pronouns	Attached Pronoun	
	هُنَّ هِنَّ They (Women)	هُمَا هِمَا Both of them (Women)	هَا She/It	
Second Person	أَنْتُمْ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتَ	Masculine
	Attached Pronoun	Attached Pronoun	Attached Pronoun	
	كُمْ All of You	كُمَا You Two	كَ You	

Second Person	أَنْتُنَّ Attached Pronoun كُنَّ All of You (Women)	أَنْتُمَا Attached Pronoun كُمَا You Two (Women)	أَنْتِ Attached Pronoun لِ You	Feminine
First Person	نَحْنُ Attached Pronoun نَا We		أَنَا Attached Pronouns نِي (Nasab) ي (Jar) I	Both

Common Jaars (Harf of Jars)

Jaar (Harf of Jar)	Meaning	Jaar (Harf of Jar)	Meaning
--------------------	---------	--------------------	---------

بِ	With	عَنْ	About/Away From
تَ	I Swear by (used for Allah SWT only)	عَلَى	Upon/On/Against
كَ	Like (comparison)	حَتَّى	Until
لِ / لَ	For (possession)	إِلَى	To/Towards
وَ	I Swear by	مُنْذُ	Since/For
مِنْ	From	مُذْ	Since
فِي	In	خِلَا	Except
رُبَّ	Maybe	حَاشَا	Except
عَدَا	Except		

Harf of Nasab Table

Harf of Nasab	Meaning	Harf of Nasab	Meaning
إِنَّ	Certainly/No Doubt	لَكِنَّ	However

أَنَّ	That	لَعَلَّ	Perhaps, So that, Hopefully
كَأَنَّ	As Though	لَيْتَ	If Only
بِأَنَّ	Because	لِأَنَّ	Because

Special Mudhaf (Zharf) Chart – 1

Special Mudhaf	Meaning	Special Mudhaf	Meaning	Special Mudhaf	Meaning
بَيْنَ	Between	مَعَ	With	قَدَّامَ	Right in Front of
حَوْلَ	Around/ Surrounding	أَمَامَ	In Front of	لَدَى	In the Presence of
عِنْدَ	With/By/At	خَلْفَ	Behind	فَوْقَ	Above
مِنْ لَدُنْ	Especially From	وَرَاءَ	Far Beyond/ Behind	تَحْتَ	Below
قَبْلَ	Before	بَعْدَ	After	دُونَ	Besides/ Other Than/ Less Than

Special Mudhaf Chart – 2

Special Mudhaf	Meaning	Special Mudhaf	Meaning	Special Mudhaf	Meaning
بَعْضٌ	Some of/ Part of	أَيُّ	Any/ Which	كُلُّ	All/ Each/ Every
مِثْلُ	Similar	نَفْسُ	The Same	غَيْرُ	Other than/ Non

Five Special Isms that appear as Mudhafs

		As Mudhaf		
Non Mudhaf (Normal Version)	Meaning	جَرُّ - Jar	نَصَبٌ - Nasab	رَفْعٌ - Rafa
أَبٌ	Father	أَبِي	أَبَا	أَبُو
أَخٌ	Brother	أَخِي	أَخَا	أَخُو

حَمٌّ	In-Law	حَمِيٍّ	حَمَا	حَمُو
فَمٌّ	Mouth	فِيٍّ	فَا	فُو
N/A (only comes as a Mudhaf)	Possessor of	ذِيٍّ	ذَا	ذُو

Body Parts in Pairs

Both Singular and Dual Forms are Feminine

Isim	Meaning	Isim	Meaning	Isim	Meaning
شَفَةٌ	Lips	أُذُنٌ	Ear	يَدٌ	Hand
قَدَمٌ	Foot	رِجْلٌ	Leg	عَيْنٌ	Eye
سَاقٌ	Shin	خَدٌ	Cheek	مِرْفَقٌ	Elbow
كَعْبٌ	Ankle	عَقِبٌ	Heel	مَنْكِبٌ	Shoulder

Feminine Set by Arabs

Arabic Term: مُؤَنَّثُ سَمَاعِيٍّ

Some Isms are Feminine because the Arabs referred to them in that way

Isim	Meaning	Isim	Meaning
أَرْضٌ	Land	رِيحٌ	Wind
حَرْبٌ	War	دَارٌ	House
بُيْرٌ	Water Well	كَاسٌ	Cup
خَمْرٌ	Alcohol	سَعِيرٌ	Hellfire
جَهَنَّمُ	Hellfire (Partly Flexible – name of a Proper place – so it is Light)	سَّمَاءٌ	Sky
نَفْسٌ	Self	شَّمْسٌ	Sun
نَارٌ	Fire	دَلْوٌ	Bucket
سَبِيلٌ	Path	طَرِيقٌ	Path
عَصَا	Staff/Stick (non-Flexible)		

Some Broken Plurals

Plural	Singular	Meaning	Plural	Singular	Meaning
--------	----------	---------	--------	----------	---------

أَزْوَاجٌ	زَوْجٌ	One of a Pair	نِعَمٌ	نِعْمَةٌ	Blessing
نِسَاءٌ	إِمْرَأَةٌ	Woman	شُهَدَاءُ	شَاهِدٌ	Witness
أَفْئِدَةٌ	فَوَادٌ	Emotional Heart	أَنْبِيَاءُ	نَبِيٌّ	Prophet

Plural by Meaning Examples

Isms which refer to a group so are considered plural

Isim	Meaning	Isim	Meaning
خَصَمٌ	An Argumentative Group	آلٌ	A Family
جُنْدٌ	An Army	نَاسٌ	A People
قَوْمٌ	A People	قَرْنٌ	A Generation
حِزْبٌ	A Group	أَهْلٌ	A Family

Pointer Table for Close/Near

	Plural	Dual	Singular
--	--------	------	----------

Masculine	هَؤُلَاءِ	هَذَانِ	هَذَا
Meaning	These	These Two	This
Feminine	هَؤُلَاءِ	هَتَانِ	هَذِهِ
Meaning	These	These Two	This

Pointer Table for Far

	Plural	Dual	Singular
Masculine	أُولَئِكَ	ذَٰئِكَ	ذَٰلِكَ
Meaning	Those	Those Two	That
Feminine	أُولَئِكَ	تَئِكَ	تَٰلِكَ
Feminine	Those	Those Two	That

Chart for Dual Pointers

Nasab/Jar - Dual	Rafa - Dual	Meaning
هَذَيْنِ	هَذَانِ - Masculine	These Two

هَتَيْنِ	هَتَانِ - Feminine	These Two
ذَيْنِكَ	ذُنِكَ - Masculine	Those Two
تَيْنِكَ	تِنِكَ - Feminine	Those Two

Light Version Chart

Makes the next Present Tense Fi'l in Light version

The Light Words:

Word	Meaning
أَنَّ	To (connector – I want to go to school) that lest
لَنْ	Will not – Translates in to the Future Tense
لِ / كَيْ / لِكَيْ	So that In order
إِذَا / إِذْنُ	In that case
حَتَّى	Until

Lightest Version Chart

Makes the next Present Tense Fi'l in Lightest version

The Lightest Words

Word	Meaning
إِنْ	If (also used in conditional statements – If this...then that)
لَمْ	Did not (gives Past Tense meaning, even though it connects with Present/Future tense Fi'l)
لَمَّا	Not yet (this word also means “when” but in this case it is not the version which makes Present/Future tense Lightest)
وَلْ	And should
فَلْ	Then should
لِ	Should

Some Harfs of Ataf

Harf of Ataf	Meaning
--------------	---------

وَ	And
ثُمَّ	Then (after some time)
أَمَّا	Either
فَ	Then (after a short duration)
بَلْ	Rather
لَكِنْ	However

Some Question Words

Question Word	Meaning	Example in Noun Sentence	Example in Verb Sentence
أَيُّ	Which	أَيُّ هُوَ ؟ (which is it?)	فِي أَيِّ مَكَانٍ تَعْمَلُ ؟ (In which place do you work in? – or In which place does she work in?)

هَلْ / أَ	Questions with a Yes or No Answer	هَلْ أَنْتَ جَائِعٌ؟ (are you (masculine) hungry?)	هَلْ تَأْكُلُ؟ (are you eating? - or is she eating?)
كَيْفَ	How	كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟ (how are you (masculine)?)	كَيْفَ فَعَلْتَ ذَلِكَ؟ (How did you (masculine) do that?)
لِمَ / لِمَاذَا	Why	لِمَاذَا أَنْتَ سَعِيدٌ؟ (why are you (masculine) happy?)	لِمَاذَا أَكَلْتَ؟ (why did you (masculine) eat?)
أَيْنَ	Where	أَيْنَ أَنْتَ ذَاهِبٌ؟ (where are you (masculine) going?)	أَيْنَ ذَهَبْتَ؟ (where did you (masculine) go?)
مَاذَا / مَا	What	مَا هُوَ الْيَوْمَ؟ (what day is it?)	مَاذَا فَعَلْتَ؟ (what did you (masculine) do?)
مَنْ	Who	مَنْ أَنْتَ؟ (Who are you	مَنْ يَأْكُلُ؟ (who (masculine)

		(masculine)?	is eating?)
مَتَى	When	مَتَى الْرَحْلَةُ؟ (when is the flight?)	مَتَى سَيَأْتِي الْعِقَابُ؟ (when will the punishment come?)
أَيَّانَ	When (asked in a surprising or sarcastic tone)		
أَنَّى	How (asked in a surprising or sarcastic tone)		

Ism Mowsool Chart

Ism Mowsool Chart		
	مَنْ	مَا
	Whoever	Whatever
Plural	Dual	Single
الَّذِينَ	الَّذَانِ	الَّذِي

Those who (Masculine)	The two who (Masculine)	The one who (Masculine)
الَّذِينَ الَّذِينَ	الَّذَانِ	الَّذِي
Those who (Feminine)	The two who (Feminine)	The one who (Feminine)

Expressing Wish/Desire Words

Word	Meaning
لَيْتَ	If only (Harf of Nasab)
لَعَلَّ	Perhaps (Harf of Nasab)
عَسَى	Hopefully/Perhaps
لَوْ / لَوْلَا	If/Had/

هَلْ	Did/Is (Yes or no question)
------	-----------------------------

Numbers in the Quran

Number	Meaning	Number	Meaning
وَاحِدٌ	1	أَرْبَعُونَ	40
إِثْنَانِ	2	خَمْسُونَ	50
ثَلَاثَةٌ	3	سِتُّونَ	60
أَرْبَعَةٌ	4	سَبْعُونَ	70
خَمْسَةٌ	5	ثَمَانُونَ	80
سِتَّةٌ	6	تِسْعٌ وَتِسْعُونَ	99
سَبْعَةٌ	7	مِئَةٌ	100
ثَمَانِيَةٌ	8	مِئَتَانِ	200
تِسْعَةٌ	9	ثَلَاثُ مِئَةٍ	300

عَشْرَةٌ / عَشْرَةٌ	10	أَلْفٌ	1,000
أَحَدَ عَشَرَ	11	أَلْفَانِ	2,000
إِثْنَا عَشَرَ	12	ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ	3,000
تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ	19	خَمْسَةُ آلَافٍ	5,000
عِشْرُونَ	20	خَمْسُونَ أَلْفًا	50,000
ثَلَاثُونَ	30	مِئَةُ أَلْفٍ	100,000

Ordinal Numbers in the Quran

Ordinal Number	Meaning
أَوَّلَ	First
ثَانِ	Second
ثَالِثُ	Third

رَابِعٌ	Fourth
سَادِسٌ	Sixth
ثَامِنٌ	Eighth

Fractions in the Quran

Fractions	Meaning
نِصْفٌ	Half
ثُلُثٌ	One third
ثُلُثَانِ	Two thirds
رُبْعٌ	One fourth
خُمْسٌ	One fifth
سُدُسٌ	One sixth
ثُمْنٌ	One eighth

Verbs

A complete chart for each Family will be provided as a template and the information for the rest of the Fi'ls will only include: Past Tense, Present Tense and Masdar

Using the template and the knowledge from the relevant chapter of this book the rest of the chart can be formed

Family Parts

Every Family البَابُ includes the following parts

Family Part	Meaning
الفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي	Past Tense Fi'l
الفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ	Present/Future Tense Fi'l
الفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي الْمَبْنِي لِلْمَجْهُولِ	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
الفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ الْمَبْنِي لِلْمَجْهُولِ	Passive Present Tense Fi'l
فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ	Commanding Fi'l
فِعْلُ النَّهْيِ	Forbidding Fi'l
المَصْدَرُ	Idea (Masdar) – Ism
إِسْمُ فَاعِلٍ	The Doer of the Action (Ism Far'il) – Ism
إِسْمُ مَفْعُولٍ	The thing the Action is done to (Ism Mafool) - Ism

إِسْمُ ظَرْفٍ	Time/Place the Action takes place (Zharf) - Ism
---------------	---

Small Families have extra Family Parts

They take the same form across all Sub Families

Family Part	Meaning	Pattern
إِسْمُ آلَةٍ	A Tool/Device for doing the action (Ism Alatun) - Ism	مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ
إِسْمُ تَفْضِيلٍ	Comparatives/Superlatives (Ism Tafdeel) - Ism	أَفْعَلٌ
إِسْمُ صِفَةٍ	Adjectives for Permanent Qualities (Ism Siffa) - Ism	فَعِيلٌ فَعِلٌ
إِسْمُ مُبَالَغَةٍ	A Magnified version of the Doer (the Ism Far'il) - Ism	فَعَّالٌ فَعْلَانُ

		فَعُولٌ فِعْعِيلٌ فُعُوءٌ
--	--	---------------------------------

Small Families – Regular Verbs

فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 1

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعُلُ	فَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form

مِفْعَلٌ	مَفْعَلٌ	لا تَفْعُلْ	أَفْعُلْ
مِفْعَالٌ	مَفْعِلٌ		
مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلَةٌ		

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To help	نَصْرٌ	يَنْصُرُ	نَصَرَ
To reach	بُلُوغٌ	يَبْلُغُ	بَلَغَ
To leave	تَرْكٌ	يَتْرُكُ	تَرَكَ
To gather	حَشْرٌ	يَحْشُرُ	حَشَرَ
To judge	حُكْمٌ	يَحْكُمُ	حَكَّمَ
To come out	خُرُوجٌ	يَخْرُجُ	خَرَجَ
To be immortal	خُلُودٌ	يَخْلُدُ	خَلَدَ

To create	خَلَقَ	يَخْلُقُ	خَلَقَ
To enter	دَخُولٌ	يَدْخُلُ	دَخَلَ
To remember	ذِكْرٌ	يَذْكُرُ	ذَكَرَ
To provide	رِزْقٌ	يَرْزُقُ	رَزَقَ
To prostrate	سُجُودٌ	يَسْجُدُ	سَجَدَ
To perceive	شُعُورٌ	يَشْعُرُ	شَعَرَ
To be grateful	شُكْرٌ	يَشْكُرُ	شَكَرَ
To be true/honest	صِدْقٌ	يَصْدُقُ	صَدَقَ
To worship	عِبَادَةٌ	يَعْبُدُ	عَبَدَ
To be corrupt	فِسْقٌ	يَفْسُقُ	فَسَقَ
To kill	قَتْلٌ	يَقْتُلُ	قَتَلَ
To sit	قُعُودٌ	يَقْعُدُ	قَعَدَ
To write	كِتَابَةٌ	يَكْتُبُ	كَتَبَ
To disbelieve	كُفْرٌ	يَكْفُرُ	كَفَرَ

To be ungrateful			
To plan	نَظَرَ	يَنْظُرُ	نَظَرَ
To study	دِرَاسَةً	يَدْرُسُ	دَرَسَ
To settle	سَكَنَّا	يَسْكُنُ	سَكَنَ
To attend	حُضُورًا	يَحْضُرُ	حَضَرَ
To request	طَلَبًا	يَطْلُبُ	طَلَبَ
To fall	سُقُوطًا	يَسْقُطُ	سَقَطَ
To claim	زَعَمًا	يَزْعُمُ	زَعَمَ
To include	شُمُولًا	يَشْمُلُ	شَمَلَ
To plan	مَكْرًا	يَمَكُرُ	مَكَرَ

فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ - Sub Family 2

For memorization the **ل ع ل** Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعِلُ	فَعَلَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ	مَفْعَلٌ	لا تَفْعِلْ	اَفْعِلْ
مِفْعَالٌ	مَفْعِلٌ		
مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلَةٌ		

--	--	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To hit	ضَرْبٌ	يَضْرِبُ	ضَرَبَ
To carry	حَمْلٌ	يَحْمِلُ	حَمَلَ
To be patient	صَبْرٌ	يَصْبِرُ	صَبَرَ
To wrong/oppress	ظُلْمٌ	يَظْلِمُ	ظَلَّمَ
To recognize	مَعْرِفَةٌ	يَعْرِفُ	عَرَفَ
To understand	عَقْلٌ	يَعْقِلُ	عَقَلَ
To forgive	مَغْفِرَةٌ	يَغْفِرُ	غَفَرَ
To decree	قَدْرٌ	يَقْدِرُ	قَدَرَ
To lie	كَذِبٌ	يَكْذِبُ	كَذَبَ
To earn	كَسَبٌ	يَكْسِبُ	كَسَبَ

To possess	مَلَكَ	يَمْلِكُ	مَلَكَ
To return	رَجُوعًا	يَرْجِعُ	رَجَعَ
To sit	جُلُوسًا	يَجْلِسُ	جَلَسَ
To descend	نُزُولًا	يَنْزِلُ	نَزَلَ
To tie	رَبَطًا	يَرْبِطُ	رَبَطَ
To defeat/overcome	غَلَبًا	يَغْلِبُ	غَلَبَ

فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 3

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعَلُ	فَعَلَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلٌ مَفْعِلٌ مَفْعَلَةٌ	لا تَفْعَلُ	إِفْعَلْ

--	--	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To open/give victory	فَتْحٌ	يَفْتَحُ	فَتَحَ
To dispatch/raise	بَعَثٌ	يَبْعَثُ	بَعَثَ
To make/place	جَعَلَ	يَجْعَلُ	جَعَلَ
To gather	جَمَعَ	يَجْمَعُ	جَمَعَ
To go	ذَهَابٌ	يَذْهَبُ	ذَهَبَ
To raise	رَفَعَ	يَرْفَعُ	رَفَعَ
To bewitch	سَحَرَ	يَسْحَرُ	سَحَرَ
To act righteously	مَصْلَحَةٌ	يَصْلَحُ	صَلَحَ
To curse	لَعَنَ	يَلْعَنُ	لَعَنَ
To benefit	نَفَعَ	يَنْفَعُ	نَفَعَ

To advise	نَصِيحَةً	يُنْصَحُ	نَصَحَ
To prevent	مَنْعًا	يَمْنَعُ	مَنَعَ
To cut	قَطْعًا	يَقْطَعُ	قَطَعَ
To be humble	خُشُوعًا	يَخْشَعُ	خَشَعَ
To become clear	ظُهُورًا	يَظْهَرُ	ظَهَرَ

فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ - Sub Family 4

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فَعِلَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلٌ مَفْعِلٌ مَفْعَلَةٌ	لا تَفْعَلُ	اِفْعَلْ

--	--	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To listen	سَمَاعَةٌ	يَسْمَعُ	سَمِعَ
To grief	حُزْنٌ	يَحْزَنُ	حَزِنَ
To consider	حَسَبٌ	يَحْسَبُ	حَسِبَ
To guard/memorize	حِفْظٌ	يَحْفَظُ	حَفِظَ
To lose	خُسْرٌ	يَخْسِرُ	خَسِرَ
To have mercy	رَحْمَةٌ	يَرْحَمُ	رَحِمَ
To witness/be present	شُهُودٌ	يَشْهَدُ	شَهِدَ
To know	عِلْمٌ	يَعْلَمُ	عَلِمَ
To do/work	عَمَلٌ	يَعْمَلُ	عَمِلَ
To dislike	كُرْهٌ	يَكْرَهُ	كَرِهَ

To drink	شَرِبَ	يَشْرَبُ	شُرِبَا
To be angry	غَضِبَ	يَغْضَبُ	غَضِبَا
To wear	لَبَسَ	يَلْبَسُ	لَبَسَا
To be happy	فَرِحَ	يَفْرَحُ	فَرَحَا
To be thirsty	عَطِشَ	يَعْطِشُ	عَطِشَا
To remain	لَبِثَ	يَلْبِثُ	لَبِثَا
To understand	فَقِهَ	يَفْقَهُ	فَقِهَا
To be sick	مَرِضَ	يَمْرَضُ	مَرَضَا
To scorn	سَخِرَ	يَسْخَرُ	سَخِرَا

فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ - Sub Family 5

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَاعِلٌ	N/A	يَفْعِلُ	فَعِلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْعُولٌ	N/A	يُفْعَلُ	فُعِلَ
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ	مَفْعَلٌ مَفْعِلٌ	لا تَفْعِلُ	اِفْعِلْ

مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلَةٌ		
------------	------------	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To consider	حِسْبَانٌ	يَحْسِبُ	حَسِبَ
To gain spoils	غَنِيْمَةٌ	يَغْنِمُ	غَنِمَ
To rush	عَجَلٌ	يَعْجِلُ	عَجَلَ

فَعْلَ يَفْعُلُ - Sub Family 6

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَعِيلٌ	N/A	يَفْعُلُ	فَعَّلَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Isim Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِفْعَلٌ مِفْعَالٌ مِفْعَلَةٌ	مَفْعَلٌ مَفْعِلٌ مَفْعَلَةٌ	لا تَفْعُلْ	أَفْعُلْ

--	--	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To be noble	كَرَمَةٌ	يَكْرُمُ	كَرَّمَ
To be heavy	ثِقَلٌ	يَثْقُلُ	ثَقَلَ
To be weak	ضَعْفًا	يَضْعُفُ	ضَعَفَ
To gain insight	بَصِيرَةٌ	يَبْصُرُ	بَصَرَ
To become big/old	كِبْرًا	يَكْبُرُ	كَبُرَ

Small Families – Irregular Verbs

مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Example of Sub Family 1 - **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** Using **ء ك ل**

1st Root Letter is Hamza ء

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
ءَاكِلٌ	أَكْلًا	يَأْكُلُ	أَكَلَ
The one who is eating	To eat	He is eating	He ate
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مَأْكُولٌ	أَكَلًا	يَأْكُلُ	أُكِلَ
The thing that is eaten	To eat	It is being ate	It was eaten
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِنْكَلٌ مِنْكَالٌ مِنْكَالَةٌ	مَأْكَلٌ مَأْكِلٌ مَأْكَلَةٌ	لَا تَأْكُلْ	كُنْ
Tool for eating	Time and Place of eating	You (Male) don't eat!	You (Male) eat!

Example of Sub Family 3 - فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ Using س ء ل

2nd Root Letter is Hamza ء

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	--------------------	-----------------

سَائِلٌ	سُؤْلًا	يَسْأَلُ	سَأَلَ
The one who is asking	To ask	He is asking	He asked
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَسْئُولٌ	سُؤْلًا	يُسْأَلُ	سُئِلَ
The one that is asked	To ask	He is being asked	He was asked
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِسْأَلٌ مِيسْأَلٌ مِيسْأَلَةٌ	مَسْأَلٌ مَسْئِلٌ مَسْأَلَةٌ	لا تَسْأَلْ	سَلْ

Tool for asking	Time and Place of asking	You (Male) don't ask!	You (Male) ask!
-----------------	--------------------------	-----------------------	-----------------

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To read	كِرَاءَةٌ	يَكْرَأُ	كَرَأَ
To take	أَخَذَ	يَأْخُذُ	أَخَذَ
To command	أَمَرَ	يَأْمُرُ	أَمَرَ
To be safe	أَمِنَ	يَأْمِنُ	أَمِنَ
To regret	أَسَفًا	يَأْسِفُ	أَسِفَ
To refuse	إِبَاءً	يَأْبَى	أَبَى
To see	رَأَى	يَرَى	رَأَى
To come	إِتْيَانً	يَأْتِي	أَتَى
To will	مَشِيئَةً	يَشَاءُ	شَاءَ

To be evil	سَوْءٌ	يُسُوءُ	سَاءَ
To come	مَجِيءٌ	يَجِيءُ	جَاءَ

مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Example using Sub Family 2: **فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ** Using **و ز ر**

1st Root Letter is **و**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
وَازِرٌ	وِزْرًا وِزْرَةً	يَزِرُ	وَزَرَ
The one who is carrying	To carry	He is carrying	He carried
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَوْزُورٌ	وِزْرًا	يُوزَرُ	وُزِرَ

	وَزَرَةٌ		
The thing that is carried	To carry	It is being carried	It was carried
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِيزَرٌ مِيزَارٌ مِيزَرَةٌ	مَوْزَرٌ مَوْزِرٌ مَوْزَرَةٌ	لا تَزِرْ	زِرْ
Tool for carrying	Time and Place of carrying	You (Male) don't carry!	You (Male) carry!

Example using Sub Family 4: فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ي ء س

1st Root Letter is ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	---------------	-----------------

		Fi'l	
يَائِسٌ	يَأْسًا	يَيَاسُ	يَيْسَ
The one who is despairing	To despair	He is despairing	He despaired
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَيُّوْسٌ	يَأْسًا	يُؤَسُّ	يُيْسَ
The thing that is despaired	To despair	It is being despaired	It was despaired of
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِيَّاسٌ مِيَّاسٌ مِيَّاسَةٌ	مَيَّاسٌ مَيَّيْسٌ مَيَّاسَةٌ	لا تَيَّاسُ	إِيَّاسُ

Tool for despairing	Time and Place of despairing	You (Male) don't despair!	You (Male) despair!

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To leave behind	وَذَرَّ	يَذُرُ	وَذَرَ
To place/put down	وَضَعَ	يَضَعُ	وَضَعَ
To befall/happen	وَقُوعٌ	يَقَعُ	وَقَعَ
To bestow	وَهَبَ	يَهَبُ	وَهَبَ
To find	وَجُودٌ	يَجِدُ	وَجَدَ
To inherit	وَرَاثَةٌ	يَرِثُ	وَرِثَ
To describe	وَصَفَ	يَصِفُ	وَصَفَ
To promise	وَعَدَ	يَعِدُ	وَعَدَ
To protect	وَقَايَةٌ	يَقِيْ	وَقَى

To be spacious	سَعَةً	يَسْعُ	وَسِعَ
To weigh	وَزَنًا	يَزِنُ	وَزَنَ
To be scared	وَجَلًا	يَوْجَلُ	وَجَلَ
To despair	يَيْئَسًا	يَيْئَسُ	يَيْئَسَ
To stand	وُقُوفًا	يَقِفُ	وَقَفَ
To carry a load	وِزْرًا	يَزِرُ	وَزَرَ
To be mandatory	وُجُوبًا	يَجِبُ	وَجَبَ
To reach/connect To obtain	وُصُولًا	يَصِلُ	وَصَلَ
To ignore/dismiss	وَدْعًا	يَدَعُ	وَدَعَ

أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2nd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Example using Sub Family 1: ذوق **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ** Using

2nd Root Letter is **و**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
ذَائِقٌ	ذُوقًا	يَذُوقُ	ذَاقَ
The one who is tasting	To taste	He is tasting	He tasted
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَذُوقٌ	ذُوقًا	يُذَاقُ	ذِيقَ

The thing that is tasted	To taste	It is being tasting	It was tasted
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِذْوَاقٌ	مَذَاقٌ مَذَاقَةٌ	لَا تَذُقْ	ذُقْ
Tool for tasting	Time and Place of tasting	You (Male) don't taste!	You (Male) taste!

Example using Sub Family 2 - فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ - Using ب ي ع

2nd Root Letter is ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
بَائِعٌ	بَيْعًا	يَبِيعُ	بَاعَ

The one who is selling	To sell	He is selling	He sold
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَبِيعٌ	بَيْعًا	يُبَاعُ	بِيعَ
The thing that is sold	To sell	It is being sold	It was sold
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مَبِيعٌ	مَبِيعٌ مَبَاعَةٌ	لَا تَبِعْ	بِعْ
Tool for selling	Time and Place of selling	You (Male) don't sell!	You (Male) sell!

Example using Sub Family 4 - فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ - Using ن ي ل

2nd Root Letter is ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
نَائِلٌ	نَيْلًا	يَنَالُ	نَالَ
The one who is obtaining	To obtain	He is obtaining	He obtained
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَنِيلٌ	نَيْلًا	يُنَالُ	نِيلَ
The thing that is obtained	To obtain	It is being obtained	It was obtained
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِنْ يَالٍ	مَنِيلٌ مَنَالَةٌ	لَا تَنَلْ	نَلْ

Tool for obtaining	Time and Place of obtaining	You (Male) don't obtain!	You (Male) obtain!

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To repent	تَوْبَةً	يَتُوبُ	تَابَ
To succeed	فَوْزٌ	يَفُوزُ	فَارَ
To say	قَوْلٌ	يَقُولُ	قَالَ
To stand up	قِيَامٌ	يَقُومُ	قَامَ
To be	كَوْنٌ	يَكُونُ	كَانَ
To die	مَوْتٌ	يَمُوتُ	مَاتَ
To fear	خَوْفٌ	يَخَافُ	خَافَ
To almost happen	كَوْدٌ	يَكَادُ	كَادَ
To plot	كَيْدٌ	يَكِيدُ	كَادَ

To increase	زِيَادَةٌ	يَزِيدُ	زَادَ
To sleep	نَوْمًا	يَنَامُ	نَامَ
To come	مَجِيءً	يَجِيءُ	جَاءَ
To will	مَشِيئَةً	يَشَاءُ	شَاءَ
To feel constraint	ضَيْقًا	يَضِيقُ	ضَاقَ
To blame	لَوْمًا	يَلُومُ	لَامَ
To return	مَعَادًا	يَعُودُ	عَادَ

ناقصٌ - Naqisun

When 3rd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Example using Sub Family 1: **تَلَا** Using **و** **ي** **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ**

3rd Root Letter is **و**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
تَالٍ	تِلَاوَةٌ	يَتْلُو	تَلَا
The one who is reciting	To recite	He is reciting	He recited/followed
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَتْلُوءٌ	تِلَاوَةٌ	يُتْلَى	تُلِيَ

The thing that is recited	To recite	It is being recited	It was recited
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِثْلَةٌ	مَثَلِي	لَا تَتْلُ	أَتْلُ
Tool for reciting	Time and Place of reciting	You (Male) don't recite!	You (Male) recite!

Example using Sub Family 2: رَمَى فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ Using ر م ي

3rd Root Letter is ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
رَامٍ	رَمْيَةً	يَرْمِي	رَمَى

The one who is throwing	To throw	He is throwing	He threw
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَرْمِيٌّ	رَمْيَةً	يُرْمَى	رُمِيَ
The thing that is thrown	To throw	It is being thrown	It was thrown
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِرْمَاةٌ	مَرْمًى	لَا تَرْمِ	ارْمِ
Tool for throwing	Time and Place of throwing	You (Male) don't throw!	You (Male) throw!

Example using Sub Family 3: ط غ ي Using فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

3rd Root Letter is ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
طَاغٍ	طُغْيَانًا	يُطْغِي	طَغَى
The one who is transgressing	To transgress	He is transgressing	He transgressed
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَطْغِيٌّ	طُغْيَانًا	يُطْغَى	طُغِيَ
The thing that is transgressed	To transgress	It is being transgressed	It was transgressed
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِطْغَاةٌ	مَطْغًى	لَا تَطْغَ	إِطْغَ
Tool for transgressing	Time and Place of transgressing	You (Male) don't transgress!	You (Male) transgress!

Example using Sub Family 4: **ب ق ي** Using **فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ**

3rd Root Letter is **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
بَاقٍ	بَقَاءٌ	يَبْقَى	بَقِيَ
The one who is remaining	To remain	He is remaining	He remained
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَبْقِيٌّ	بَقَاءٌ	يُبْقَى	بُقِيَ
The thing that is made to remain	To remain	It is being made to remain	It was made to remain
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the	Zharf (Place/Time of	Forbidding Form	Command Form

Action with)	Action)		
مَبَقَاةٌ	مَبَقَى	لَا تَبَقْ	إِبَقْ
Tool for remaining	Time and Place of remaining	You (Male) don't remain!	You (Male) remain!

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To supplicate	دُعَاءٌ	يَدْعُو	دَعَا
To overlook	عَفْوٌ	يَعْفُو	عَفَا
To want/seek	بَغْيٌ	يَبْغِي	بَغَى
To run/flow	جَرَيَانٌ	يَجْرِي	جَرَى
To reward	جَزَاءٌ	يَجْزِي	جَزَى
To judge/decreed/fulfill	قَضَاءٌ	يَقْضِي	قَضَى
To suffice	كِفَايَةٌ	يَكْفِي	كَفَا

To guide	هُدًى	يَهْدِي	هَدَى
To fearful	خَشِيَّةً	يَخْشَى	خَشِيَ
To be pleased	رِضْوَانً	يَرْضَى	رَضِيَ
To forget	نِسْيَانً	يُنْسَى	نَسِيَ
To see	رَأًى	يَرَى	رَأَى
To transgress	طُغْيَانًا	يَطْغَى	طَغَى
To disobey	عِصْيَانًا	يَعْصِي	عَصَى
To elapse	مُضِيًّا	يَمْضِي	مَضَى
To remain	بَقَاءً	يَبْقَى	بَقِيَ
To be saved	نَجَاةً	يَنْجُو	نَجَا
To recite To follow	تِلَاوَةً	يَتْلُو	تَلَا
To refuse	إِبَاءً	يَأْبَى	أَبَى

To throw	رَمَيْتَ	يَرْمِي	رَمَى
To walk	مَشَيْتَ	يَمْشِي	مَشَى
To complain	شَكَوْتَ	يَشْكُو	شَكَأَ
To cry	بُكَاءً	يَبْكِي	بَكَى
To meet	لِقَاءً	يَلْقَى	لَقِيَ
To pass before	خَلَاءً	يَخْلُو	خَلَا
To give drink	سَكَايَةً	يَسْكِي	سَكَى
To be hidden	خَفِيَةً	يَخْفَى	خَفِيَ
To come	إِثْيَانًا	يَأْتِي	أَتَى
To build	بِنَاءً	يَبْنِي	بَنَى
To transgress	عَدَاوَةً	يَعْدُو	عَدَا

لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

Example using Sub Family 2: فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ Using و ل ي

1st Root Letter is و

3rd Root Letter is ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
وَالٍ	وَلَايَةٌ	يَلِي	وَلَّى
The one who is befriending	To befriend	He is befriending	He befriended
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَوْلِيٌّ	وَلَايَةٌ	يُؤَلَّى	وُلِيَ

The one who is befriended	To befriend	He is being befriended	He was befriended
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِيلَاةٌ	مَوْلى	لَا تَلِ	لِ
Tool for befriending	Time and Place of befriending	You (Male) don't befriend!	You (Male) befriend!

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To become weak	وُنْيَا	يَنْي	وَنَى
To protect	وِقَايَةً	يَقِي	وَقَى
To befriend To be in charge	وَلَايَةً	يَلِي	وَلَى

لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

Example using Sub Family 2: ك و ي Using فَعَلَ يَفْعِلُ

2nd Root Letter is و

3rd Root Letter is ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
كَاوٍ	كَاءٍ	يَكْوِي	كَوَى
The one who is ironing	To iron	He is ironing	He ironed
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مَكْوِيٌّ	كَيَّا	يُكْوَى	كُوِيَ
The thing which is ironed	To iron	It is being ironed	It was ironed
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِكْوَاةٌ	مَكْوَى	لَا تَكُوْ	اِكُوْ
Tool for ironing	Time and Place of ironing	You (Male) don't iron!	You (Male) iron!

Example using Sub Family 4: فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ Using ع ي ي

2nd Root Letter is ي

3rd Root Letter is ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
-------------------	--------	--------------------	-----------------

عَيَّ	عَيَّا	يُعَيِّ	عَيَّ عَيَّ
The one who is incapable of	To be incapable of	He is incapable of	He was incapable of
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَعْيُ	عَيَّا	يُعَيِّ	عُيَّ
The one who is made incapable of	To be incapable of	He is being made incapable of	He was made incapable of
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِعْيَاةٌ	مَعْيًّ	لَا تُعَيِّ	إُعَيِّ
Tool for being incapable of	Time and Place of being incapable of	You (Male) don't be incapable of!	You (Male) be incapable of!

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To narrate	رَوَايَةً	يَرْوِي	رَوَى
To live	حَيَاةً	يَحْيِي	حَيَّ / حَيَّيَ
To fold	طَيًّا	يَطْوِي	طَوَى
To roast	شَيًّا	يَشْوِي	شَوَى
To take refuge	أَوِيًّا	يَأْوِي	أَوَى

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

Example using Sub Family 1: **ظ ن ن** Using **فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ**

2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
ظَانٌّ	ظَنًّا	يُظَنُّ	ظُنَّ
The one who is assuming	To assume	He is assuming	He assumed
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَظْنُونٌ	ظَنًّا	يُظَنُّ	ظُنَّ
The thing that is	To assume	It is being	It was assumed

being assumed		assumed	
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِظَنُّ	مَظَنُّ	لَا تَظُنَّ	ظُنَّ
مِظَنَانُ	مَظِنُّ	لَا تَظُنَّ	ظُنَّ
مِظَنَّةُ	مَظَنَّةُ	لَا تَظُنُّ	أَظُنُّ
Tool for assuming	Time and Place of assuming	You (Male) don't assume!	You (Male) assume!

Example using Sub Family 2: ف ر ر Using فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ

2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
فَارٌّ	فِرَارًا	يَفِرُّ	فَرَّ

The one who is fleeing	To flee	He is fleeing	He fled
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَفْرُورٌ	فِرَارًا	يُفَرُّ	فُرِّ
The thing that is fled from	To flee	It is being fled from	It was fled from
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مَقَرٌّ مِفْرَارٌ مِقَرَّةٌ	مَقَرٌّ مَفِرٌّ مَقَرَّةٌ	لَا تَفِرُّ لَا تَفِرُّ لَا تَفِرُّ	فِرِّ فِرِّ اِفْرِزْ
Tool for fleeing	Time and Place of fleeing	You (Male) don't flee!	You (Male) flee!

Example using Sub Family 3: **فَعَلَ يَفْعَلُ** Using **م س س**

2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مَاسٌّ	مَسًّا	يَمَسُّ	مَسَّ
The one who is touching	To touch	He is touching	He touched
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مَمْسُوسٌ	مَسًّا	يُمَسُّ	مُسَّ
The one who is touched	To touch	He is being touched	He was touched
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِمَّسٍّ	مَمَّسٍّ	لَا تَمَسَّ	مَسَّ

مِمَّسَّاسٌ مِمَّسَّةٌ	مَمِسٌ مَمَسَّةٌ	لَا تَمَسُّ لَا تَمَسِّنُ	مَسٌّ إِمْسِنُ
Tool for touching	Time and Place of touching	You (Male) don't touch!	You (Male) touch!

Example using Sub Family 4: ظ ل ل Using فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ

2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
ظَالٌ	ظُلُوءًا	يَظَلُّ	ظَلَّ
The one who is remaining	To remain	He is remaining	He remained
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مَظْلُوءٌ	ظَلُّوا	يُظَلُّ	ظَلَّ
The one who is made to remain	To remain	He is being made to remain	He was made to remain
Ism Alatun (Tool for doing the Action with)	Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مِظْلٌ مِظْلَالٌ مِظْلَةٌ	مَظْلٌ مَظِلٌ مَظْلَةٌ	لا تَظَلَّ لا تَظَلَّ لا تَظَلَّلْ	ظَلَّ ظَلَّ إِظْلَلْ
Tool for remaining	Time and Place of remaining	You (Male) don't remain!	You (Male) remain!

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To live	حَيَاةً	يَحْيِي	حَيَّ / حَيَّ
To return/give back	رَدَّ	يُرَدُّ	رَدَّ

To block/hinder	صَدَّ	يَصُدُّ	صَدَّ
To harm	ضَرَّ	يَضُرُّ	ضَرَّ
To go astray	ضَلَّ	يَضِلُّ	ضَلَّ
To count	عَدَّ	يَعُدُّ	عَدَّ
To deceive	غُرِّرَ	يَغِرُّ	غَرَّ
To extend/spread out	مَدَّ	يَمُدُّ	مَدَّ
To doubt	شَكَّ	يَشْكُ	شَكَّ
To touch	مَسَّ	يَمَسُّ	مَسَّ
To settle	قَرَّ	يَقِرُّ	قَرَّ
To spread	بَثَّ	يَبِثُّ	بَثَّ
To pass	مَرَّ	يَمُرُّ	مَرَّ
To flee	فَرَّ	يَفِرُّ	فَرَّ
To assume	ظَنَّ	يَظُنُّ	ظَنَّ
To wish	وَدَّ	يَوَدُّ	وَدَّ

Big Families – Regular Verbs

Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

For memorization the ل ع ف Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعِّلٌ	تَفْعِيلًا	يُفَعِّلُ	فَعَّلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعِّلٌ	تَفْعِيلًا	يُفَعِّلُ	فُعِّلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفَعِّلٌ		لَا تُفَعِّلُ	فَعِّلْ

--	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To change	تَبْدِيلٌ	يُبَدِّلُ	بَدَّلَ
To give good news	تَبَشِيرٌ	يُبَشِّرُ	بَشَّرَ
To glorify	تَسْبِيحٌ	يُسَبِّحُ	سَبَّحَ
To bring under control	تَسْخِيرٌ	يُسَخِّرُ	سَخَّرَ
To confirm something to be true	تَصْدِيقٌ	يُصَدِّقُ	صَدَّقَ
To punish	تَعْذِيبٌ	يُعَذِّبُ	عَذَّبَ
To teach	تَعْلِيمٌ	يُعَلِّمُ	عَلَّمَ
To send forward	تَقْدِيمٌ	يُقَدِّمُ	قَدَّمَ
To deny something	تَكْذِيبٌ	يُكَذِّبُ	كَذَّبَ
To send down	تَنْزِيلٌ	يُنْزِلُ	نَزَّلَ

To remind	تَذْكِرًا	يُذَكِّرُ	ذَكَرَ
To speak	تَكْلِيمًا	يُكَلِّمُ	كَلَّمَ
To burn	تَحْرِيقًا	يُحَرِّقُ	حَرَّقَ
To separate	تَفْرِيقًا	يُفَرِّقُ	فَرَّقَ
To prefer	تَفْضِيلًا	يُفَضِّلُ	فَضَّلَ

فَاعِلٌ يُفَاعِلُ - Family 3

For memorization the **ل ف ع** Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعِلٌ	فِعَالًا مُفَاعَلَةً	يُفَاعِلُ	فَاعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعَلٌ	فِعَالًا مُفَاعَلَةً	يُفَاعَلُ	فُوعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفَاعَلٌ		لَا تُفَاعِلُ	فَاعِلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To strive	جِهَادًا مُجَاهَدَةً	يُجَاهِدُ	جَاهَدَ
To fight	قِتَالًا مُقَاتَلَةً	يُقَاتِلُ	قَاتَلَ
To behave hypocritically	نِفَاقًا مُنَافَقَةً	يُنَافِقُ	نَافَقَ
To migrate	هِجَارًا مُهَاجَرَةً	يُهَاجِرُ	هَاجَرَ
To argue	جِدَالًا مُجَادَلَةً	يُجَادِلُ	جَادَلَ
To punish	عِقَابًا مُعَاقِبَةً	يُعَاقِبُ	عَاقَبَ

To take a pledge	عِهَادًا مُعَاهَدَةً	يُعَاهِدُ	عَاهَدَ
To take account	حِسَابًا مُحَاسَبَةً	يُحَاسِبُ	حَاسَبَ

أَفْعَلْ يُفْعِلُ - Family 4

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعِلٌ	إِفْعَالًا	يُفْعِلُ	أَفْعَلَّ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعَلٌ	إِفْعَالًا	يُفْعَلُ	أُفْعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفْعَلٌ	لا تُفْعِلْ		أَفْعِلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To see	إِبْصَارًا	يُبْصِرُ	أَبْصَرَ
To do good	إِحْسَانًا	يُحْسِنُ	أَحْسَنَ
To expel/bring out	إِخْرَاجًا	يُخْرِجُ	أَخْرَجَ
To make enter	إِدْخَالًا	يُدْخِلُ	أَدْخَلَ
To send back	إِرْجَاعًا	يُرْجِعُ	أَرْجَعَ
To send/dispatch	إِرْسَالًا	يُرْسِلُ	أَرْسَلَ
To exceed	إِسْرَافًا	يُسْرِفُ	أَسْرَفَ
To submit	إِسْلَامًا	يُسْلِمُ	أَسْلَمَ
To exceed	إِسْرَافًا	يُسْرِفُ	أَسْرَفَ
To associate	إِشْرَاكًا	يُشْرِكُ	أَشْرَكَ
To become	إِصْبَاحًا	يُصْبِحُ	أَصْبَحَ
To ignore/turn away	إِعْرَاضًا	يُعْرِضُ	أَعْرَضَ
To drown	إِغْرَاقًا	يُغْرِقُ	أَغْرَقَ

To spread corruption	إِفْسَادًا	يُفْسِدُ	أَفْسَدَ
To succeed	إِفْلَاحًا	يُفْلِحُ	أَفْلَحَ
To make grow	إِنْبَاتًا	يُنْبِتُ	أَنْبَتَ
To warn	إِنذَارًا	يُنذِرُ	أَنذَرَ
To send down	إِنزَالًا	يُنزِلُ	أَنْزَلَ
To produce	إِنشَاءً	يُنشِئُ	أَنْشَأَ
To favor	إِنْعَامًا	يُنْعِمُ	أَنْعَمَ
To spend	إِنْفَاقًا	يُنْفِقُ	أَنْفَقَ
To deny/not recognize	إِنكَارًا	يُنْكِرُ	أَنْكَرَ
To destroy	إِهْلَاكًا	يُهْلِكُ	أَهْلَكَ
To complete	إِكْمَالًا	يُكْمِلُ	أَكْمَلَ
To impress	إِعْجَابًا	يُعْجِبُ	أَعْجَبَ
To honour	إِكْرَامًا	يُكْرِمُ	أَكْرَمَ
To feed	إِطْعَامًا	يُطْعِمُ	أَطْعَمَ

To prepare	إِعْتَادًا	يُعْتَدُ	أَعْتَدَ
To announce	إِعْلَانًا	يُعْلِنُ	أَعْلَنَ

تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ - Family 5

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَعَّلٌ	تَفَعُّلاً	يَتَفَعَّلُ	تَفَعَّلَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَعَّلٌ	تَفَعُّلاً	يُتَفَعَّلُ	تُفَعِّلُ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُتَفَعَّلٌ	لا تَتَفَعَّلُ		تَفَعَّلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To reflect/ponder	تَفَكُّرًا	يَتَفَكَّرُ	تَفَكَّرَ
To remember/pay heed	تَذَكُّرًا	يَتَذَكَّرُ	تَذَكَّرَ
To become clear	تَبَيُّنًا	يَتَبَيَّنُ	تَبَيَّنَ
To wait and watch	تَرْبُّصًا	يَتَرَبَّصُ	تَرَبَّصَ
To learn	تَعَلُّمًا	يَتَعَلَّمُ	تَعَلَّمَ
To speak/talk	تَكَلُّمًا	يَتَكَلَّمُ	تَكَلَّمَ
To place trust	تَوَكُّلًا	يَتَوَكَّلُ	تَوَكَّلَ
To accept	تَقَبُّلًا	يَتَقَبَّلُ	تَقَبَّلَ
To become separate	تَفَرُّقًا	يَتَفَرَّقُ	تَفَرَّقَ
To come down	تَنْزُلًا	يَتَنَزَّلُ	تَنَزَّلَ
To purify	تَطَهُّرًا	يَتَطَهَّرُ	تَطَهَّرَ
To be arrogant	تَكَبُّرًا	يَتَكَبَّرُ	تَكَبَّرَ

تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَاعِلٌ	تَفَاعُلًا	يَتَفَاعَلُ	تَفَاعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَاعَلٌ	تَفَاعُلًا	يُتَفَاعَلُ	تُفَاعِلُ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُتَفَاعَلٌ	لَا تَتَفَاعَلُ		تَفَاعَلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To be blessed	تَبَارُكًا	يَتَبَارَكُ	تَبَارَكَ
To face each other	تَقَابُلًا	يَتَقَابَلُ	تَقَابَلَ
To show outwardly	تَظَاهُرًا	يَتَظَاهَرُ	تَظَاهَرَ
To argue	تَخَاصُمًا	يَتَخَاصِمُ	تَخَاصَمَ
To dispute/disagree	تَنَازُعًا	يَتَنَازَعُ	تَنَازَعَ

Family 7 - **إِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ**

For memorization the **ل ع ل** Root Letters can be used

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْفَعِلٌ	إِنْفِعَالًا	يَنْفَعِلُ	إِنْفَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْفَعَلٌ		لَا تَنْفَعِلُ	إِنْفَعِلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To turn around/retreat	إِنْقِلَابًا	يَنْقَلِبُ	إِنْقَلَبَ
To gush out	إِنْبِجَاسًا	يَنْبَجِسُ	إِنْبَجَسَ
To be dispatched	إِنْبِعَاثًا	يَنْبَعِثُ	إِنْبَعَثَ
To be split	إِنْفِطَارًا	يَنْفَطِرُ	إِنْفَطَرَ
To be free	إِنْطِلَاقًا	يَنْطَلِقُ	إِنْطَلَقَ
To be turned To leave	إِنْصِرَافًا	يَنْصَرِفُ	إِنْصَرَفَ
To burst forth	إِنْفِجَارًا	يَنْفَجِرُ	إِنْفَجَرَ
To pour	إِنْهَمَارًا	يَنْهَمِرُ	إِنْهَمَرَ

إِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ - Family 8

For memorization the **ل ف ع** Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَعِلٌ	إِفْتِعَالًا	يَفْتَعِلُ	إِفْتَعَلَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَعَلٌ	إِفْتِعَالًا	يُفْتَعَلُ	أُفْتَعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفْتَعَلٌ		لَا تَفْتَعِلُ	إِفْتَعِلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To differ	اِخْتِلَافًا	يَخْتَلِفُ	اِخْتَلَفَ
To come closer	اِقْتِرَابًا	يَقْتَرِبُ	اِقْتَرَبَ
To gather/meet	اجْتِمَاعًا	يَجْتَمِعُ	اجْتَمَعَ
To listen carefully	اِسْتِمَاعًا	يَسْتَمِعُ	اِسْتَمَعَ
To wait	اِنْتِظَارًا	يَنْتَظِرُ	اِنْتَظَرَ
To dispute	اِخْتِصَامًا	يَخْتَصِمُ	اِخْتَصَمَ
To earn	اِكْتِسَابًا	يَكْتَسِبُ	اِكْتَسَبَ
To spread	اِنْتِشَارًا	يَنْتَشِرُ	اِنْتَشَرَ
To avoid	اِجْتِنَابًا	يَجْتَنِبُ	اِجْتَنَبَ
To fight each other	اِقْتِتَالًا	يَقْتَتِلُ	اِقْتَتَلَ

Family 9 - اِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ

For memorization the **ل ع ف** Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعَلُّ	اِفْعِلَالًا	يَفْعَلُّ	اِفْعَلَّ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفْعَلُّ	لا تَفْعَلَّ لا تَفْعَلَّ لا تَفْعَلِّ		اِفْعَلَّ اِفْعَلَّ اِفْعَلِّ

--	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To become black	إِسْوَدَادًا	يَسْوَدُّ	إِسْوَدَّ
To become white	إِبْيَاضًا	يَبْيِضُ	إِبْيَضَّ
To become yellow	إِصْفِرَارًا	يَصْفَرُّ	إِصْفَرَّ
To become green	إِخْضِرَارًا	يَخْضَرُّ	إِخْضَرَ

إِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ - Family 10

For memorization the **ل ع ل** Root Letters can be used

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفْعِلٌ	إِسْتِفْعَالًا	يَسْتَفْعِلُ	إِسْتَفْعَلَ
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفْعَلٌ	إِسْتِفْعَالًا	يُسْتَفْعَلُ	أُسْتَفْعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَفْعَلٌ		لَا تَسْتَفْعِلُ	إِسْتَفْعِلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To seek to hasten	إِسْتِعْجَالًا	يَسْتَعِجِلُ	إِسْتَعْجَلَ
To seek forgiveness	إِسْتِغْفَارًا	يَسْتَغْفِرُ	إِسْتَغْفَرَ
To behave arrogantly	إِسْتِكْبَارًا	يَسْتَكْبِرُ	إِسْتَكْبَرَ
To deem weak/oppress	إِسْتِضْعَافًا	يَسْتَضْعِفُ	إِسْتَضْعَفَ

Big Families – Irregular Verbs

Family 2 - فَعَّلَ يُفَعِّلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To appoint a time	تَأْجِيلًا	يُؤَجِّلُ	أَجَّلَ
To help	تَأْيِيدًا	يُؤَيِّدُ	أَيَّدَ
To provide accommodation	تَبْوِيئًا	يُبَوِّئُ	بَوَّأَ
To inform	تَنْبِيئًا	يُنَبِّئُ	نَبَّأَ

مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To make easy	تَيْسِيرًا	يُيسِّرُ	يَسَّرَ
To respect	تَوْقِيرًا	يُوقِّرُ	وَقَّرَ
To provide accommodation	تَبْوِيئًا	يُبَوِّئُ	بَوَّأَ

أجوف - Ajwafun

When 2nd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To clarify	تَبْيِينٌ	يُبَيِّنُ	بَيَّنَ
To beautify	تَزْيِينٌ	يُزَيِّنُ	زَيَّنَ

ناقص - Naqisun

When 3rd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعِّع	تَفْعِيَّة	يُفَعِّعُ	فَعَّعَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَعِّعٌ	تَفْعِيَّة	يُفَعِّعُ	فُعِّعَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُفَعِّىً	لا تَفْعُ	فَعَّ
-----------	-----------	-------

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To save	تَنْجِيَةٌ	يُنَجِّي	نَجَّى
To name	تَسْمِيَةٌ	يُسَمِّي	سَمَّى
To reward/give	تَلْقِيَةٌ	يُلْقِي	لَقَّى
To purify	تَزْكِيَةٌ	يُزَكِّي	زَكَّى

لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are ي or و

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To command	تَوْصِيَّةٌ	يُوصِّي	وَصَّى
To turn away	تَوَلِيَّةٌ	يُوَلِّي	وَلَّى
To fulfill To pay in full	تَوْفِيَّةٌ	يُوفِّي	وَفَّى

لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To greet	تَحِيَّةٌ	يُحَيِّي	حَيَّى
To make equal To fashion	تَسْوِيَّةٌ	يُسَوِّي	سَوَّى

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To lighten	تَخْفِيفًا	يُخَفِّفُ	خَفَّفَ

فَاعِلَ يُفَاعِلُ - Family 3

مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

1st Root Letter is Hamza ء

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤَاعِلٌ	ءِعَالًا مُؤَاعَلَةٌ	يُؤَاعِلُ	ءَاعَلَ or written as آعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤَاعِلٌ	ءِعَالًا مُؤَاعَلَةٌ	يُؤَاعَلُ	أُؤَاعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُؤَاعَلٌ	لَا تُؤَاعِلُ	ءَاعِلٌ
-----------	---------------	---------

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To seize	إِخَاذًا مُؤَاخَذَةً	يُؤَاخِذُ	ءَاخَذَ / آخَذَ

مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is ي or و

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To exchange pledges	وِعَادًا مُؤَاعَدَةً	يُؤَاعِدُ	وَاعَدَ

أَجَوْفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2nd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To converse	حِوَارًا مُحَاوَرَةً	يُحَاوِرُ	حَاوَرَ
To overstep	جِوَازًا مُجَاوَزَةً	يُجَاوِرُ	جَاوَرَ
To pledge support	بِإِعَا مُبَايَعَةً	يُبَايِعُ	بَايَعَ

نَاقِصٌ - Naqisun

When 3rd Root Letter is و or ي

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعٍ	فِعَاءٌ مُفَاعَاةٌ	يُفَاعِي	فَاعَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعِي	فِعَاءٌ مُفَاعَاةٌ	يُفَاعَى	فُؤِعِيَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفَاعِي		لَا تُفَاعِ	فَاعِ

--	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To call out	نِدَاءٌ مُنَادَاةٌ	يُنَادِي	نَادَى
To argue/deny	مِرَاءٌ مُمَارَاةٌ	يُمَارِي	مَارَى
To meet	لِقَاءٌ مُلَاقَاةٌ	يُلَاقِي	لَاقَى

لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are ي or و

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To sympathize	وِلَاءٌ مَوْلَاةٌ	يُؤَالِي	وَالَى

لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاوٍ	فِوَاءٌ مُفَاوَاةٌ	يُفَاوِي	فَاوَى
Ism Mafool (the)	Masdar	Passive Present	Passive Past

thing acted on)		Tense Fi'l	Tense Fi'l
مُفَاوًى	فِوَاءً مُفَاوَاةً	يُفَاوًى	فُؤَوِيَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفَاوًى		لَا تُفَاوِ	فَاوِ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To equalize	سِوَاءً مُسَاوَاةً	يُسَاوِي	سَاوَى

مُضَاعَفٌ - Moodaarefun

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعِلٌ	فِلَالًا مُفَالَّةً	يُفَالُ	فَالَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَاعِلٌ	فِلَالًا مُفَالَّةً	يُفَالُ	فُؤِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفَاعِلٌ	لَا تُفَالُ لَا تُفَالُ		فَالَ فَالَ

	فَالِلٌ	لا تُفَالِلُ	
--	---------	--------------	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To harm	ضِرَارًا مُضَارَّةً	يُضَارُّ	ضَارَّ
To dispute	شِقَاقًا مُشَاقَّةً	يُشَاقُّ	شَاقَّ
To argue/debate	حِجَاجًا مُحَاجَّةً	يُحَاجُّ	حَاجَّ
To oppose	حِدَادًا مُحَادَّةً	يُحَادُّ	حَادَّ

أَفْعَلَ يُفْعِلُ - Family 4

مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤْعِلٌ	إِيعَالًا	يُؤْعِلُ	ءَاعَلَ or written as آَعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُؤْعَلٌ	إِيعَالًا	يُؤْعَلُ	أُؤْعِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form

مُؤَعِّلٌ	لَا تُؤَعِّلُ	ءَاعِلٌ
-----------	---------------	---------

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To prefer	إِثَارًا	يُؤَثِّرُ	ءَاثَرَ / آثَرَ
To believe	إِيمَانًا	يُؤْمِنُ	آمَنَ
To perceive	إِنْسَاءً	يُؤْنِسُ	آنَسَ
To give	إِيتَاءً	يُؤْتِي	آتَى
To harm	إِذَاءً	يُؤْذِي	آذَى

مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is و or ي

1st Root Letter is و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُولِجٌ	إِيْلَاجًا	يُؤَلِّجُ	أَوَّلَجَ
The one who makes it enter	To make enter	He is making it enter	He made it enter
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُولِجٌ	إِيْلَاجًا	يُؤَلِّجُ	أُوِّلِجَ
The thing which is entered	To make enter	It is being entered into	It was made to enter
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُولِجٌ		لَا تُؤَلِّجُ	أَوَّلِجْ

Time and Place of making it enter	You (Male) don't make it enter!	You (Male) make it enter!
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------

1st Root Letter is ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُوقِنٌ	إِيقَانًا	يُوقِنُ	أَيَّقَنَ
The one who is certain	To be certain	He is certain	He was certain
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُوقِنٌ	إِيقَانًا	يُوقِنُ	أُوقِنَ
The thing which is made certain	To be certain	It is being made certain	It was made certain
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُوقِنٌ	لا تُوقِنُ		أَيِّقِنُ

Time and Place of being certain	You (Male) don't be certain!	You (Male) be certain!

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To make inherit	إِيرَاثًا	يُورِثُ	أَوْرَثَ
To be fearful	إِيجَاسًا	يُوجِسُ	أَوْجَسَ

أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2nd Root Letter is ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l

مُفْعِلٌ	إِفَالَةٌ	يُفْعِلُ	أَفَالٌ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَالٌ	إِفَالَةٌ	يُفَالُ	أُفِيلُ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form	
مُفَالٌ	لا تِفِلْ	أَفِلْ	

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To make taste	إِذَاقَةٌ	يُذِيقُ	أَذَاقَ
To intend	إِرَادَةٌ	يُرِيدُ	أَرَادَ
To strike/befall	إِصَابَةٌ	يُصِيبُ	أَصَابَ

To obey	إِطَاعَةٌ	يُطِيعُ	أَطَاعَ
To establish	إِقَامَةٌ	يُقِيمُ	أَقَامَ
To make die	إِمَاتَةٌ	يُمِيتُ	أَمَاتَ
To return	إِعَادَةٌ	يُعِيدُ	أَعَادَ
To return in repentance	إِنَابَةٌ	يُنِيبُ	أَنَابَ
To reply	إِجَابَةٌ	يُجِيبُ	أَجَابَ
To waste	إِضَاعَةٌ	يُضِيعُ	أَضَاعَ
To humiliate	إِهَانَةٌ	يُهِينُ	أَهَانَ
To surround	إِحَاطَةٌ	يُحِيطُ	أَحَاطَ

ناقصٌ - Naqisun

When 3rd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعٍ	إِفْعَاءٌ	يُفْعِي	أَفْعَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْعًى	إِفْعَاءٌ	يُفْعَى	أُفْعِيَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفْعًى		لَا تُفْعِ	أَفْعِ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To give life	إِحْيَاءٌ	يُحْيِي	أَحْيَى

To conceal	إِخْفَاءٌ	يُخْفِي	أَخْفَى
To show	إِرَاءَةٌ	يُرِي	أَرَى
To enrich	إِغْنَاءٌ	يُغْنِي	أَغْنَى
To throw	إِلْقَاءٌ	يُلْقِي	أَلْقَى
To save/rescue	إِنْجَاءٌ	يُنْجِي	أَنْجَى
To give	إِيْتَاءٌ	يُؤْتِي	آتَى
To harm	إِيْذَاءٌ	يُؤْذِي	آذَى

لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

The 1st Root Letter is made a Vowel: و

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُوعٍ	إِيعَاءٌ	يُوعِي	أُوعِيَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُوعًى	إِيعَاءٌ	يُوعَى	أُوعِيَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُوعًى		لَا تُوعِ	أُوعِ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
---------	--------	---------------	------------

To reveal/inspire	إِيْحَاءٌ	يُوحِي	أَوْحَى
To fulfill	إِيْفَاءٌ	يُوفِي	أَوْفَى
To command	إِيْصَاءٌ	يُوصِي	أَوْصَى

لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

مُضَاعَفٌ - Moodaarefun

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفِلٌّ	إِفْلَآءٌ	يُفِلُّ	أَفْلَّ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفَلٌّ	إِفْلَآءٌ	يُفَلُّ	أُفِلَّ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفَلٌّ	لا تُفِلَّ لا تُفِلَّ لا تُفِلِّلْ		أَفِلَّ أَفِلَّ أَفِلِّلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To complete	إِثْمَامًا	يُتِمُّ	أَتَمَّ
To love	إِحْبَابًا	يُحِبُّ	أَحَبَّ
To make lawful/cause to settle	إِحْلَالًا	يُحِلُّ	أَحَلَّ
To conceal	إِسْرَارًا	يُسِرُّ	أَسَرَّ
To misguide	إِضْلَالًا	يُضِلُّ	أَضَلَّ
To prepare	إِعْدَادًا	يُعِدُّ	أَعَدَّ
To make slip	إِزْلَالًا	يُزِلُّ	أَزَلَّ
To help/supply To extend	إِمْدَادًا	يُمِدُّ	أَمَدَّ

تَفَعَّلَ يَتَفَعَّلُ - Family 5

مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To settle in a home	تَبَوُّاءٌ	يَتَبَوَّاءُ	تَبَوَّأَ
To be late	تَأَخَّرًا	يَتَأَخَّرُ	تَأَخَّرَ

مِثَالٌ - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is و or ي

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
---------	--------	---------------	------------

To face	تَوَجُّهًا	يَتَوَجَّهُ	تَوَجَّهَ
To rely	تَوَكَّلًا	يَتَوَكَّلُ	تَوَكَّلَ
To make dry ablution	تَيَمَّمًا	يَتَيَمَّمُ	تَيَمَّمَ

أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2nd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To volunteer	تَطَوُّعًا	يَتَطَوَّعُ	تَطَوَّعَ
To make up lies	تَقْوُّلًا	يَتَقَوَّلُ	تَقَوَّلَ

ناقصٌ - Naqisun

When 3rd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Isim Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَعِّ	تَفَعُّيًا	يَتَفَعَّى	تَفَعَّى
Isim Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَعَّى	تَفَعُّيًا	يُتَفَعَّى	تُفَعَّى
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَفَعَّى		لا تَتَفَعَّ	تَفَعَّ

--	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To wished	تَمَنَّى	يَتَمَنَّى	تَمَنَّى
To purify oneself	تَزَكَّى	يَتَزَكَّى	تَزَكَّى
To come into contact	تَلَقَّى	يَتَلَقَّى	تَلَقَّى
To take pleasure To be distracted	تَلَهَّى	يَتَلَهَّى	تَلَهَّى

لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ - Lafeeun Mafrukun

When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To turn away To befriend	تَوَلَّى	يَتَوَلَّى	تَوَلَّى
To make die To receive in full	تَوَفَّى	يَتَوَفَّى	تَوَفَّى

لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

مُضَاعَفٌ - Moodaarefun

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To be split	تَشَقُّقًا	يَتَشَقَّقُ	تَشَقَّقَ
To make dry ablution	تَيَمُّمًا	يَتَيَمَّمُ	تَيَمَّمَ

تَفَاعَلَ يَتَفَاعَلُ - Family 6

مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To ask each other	تَسَاءُلًا	يَتَسَاءَلُ	تَسَاءَلَ

مِثَالٌ - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is ي or و

أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2nd Root Letter is و or ي

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To cooperate	تَعَاوُنًا	يَتَعَاوَنُ	تَعَاوَنَ

ناقصٌ - Naqisun

When 3rd Root Letter is و or ي

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَاعٍ	تَفَاعِيًا	يَتَفَاعَى	تَفَاعَى

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَاعٍ	تَفَاعِيًا	يُتَفَاعَى	تُفُوعِي
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form	
مُتَفَاعٍ	لَا تَتَفَاعَ	تَفَاعَ	

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To withdraw	تَجَافِيًا	يَتَجَافَى	تَجَافَى
To doubt	تَمَارِيًا	يَتَمَارَى	تَمَارَى

لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To urge another	تَوَاصِيًا	يَتَوَاصَى	تَوَاصَى

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَالٌ	تَفَالًا	يَتَفَالُ	تَفَالَّ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَفَالٌ	تَفَالًا	يُتَفَالُ	تُفُولٌ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُتَفَالٌ	لا تَتَفَالُ لا تَتَفَالُ لا تَتَفَالُ		تَفَالْ تَفَالْ تَفَالْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To touch	تَمَسَّأَ	يَتَمَسُّ	تَمَسَّ

Family 7 - اِنْفَعَلَ يَنْفَعِلُ

Mahmuzun - مَهْمُوزٌ

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Mithalun - مِثَالٌ

When 1st Root Letter is و or ي

Ajwafun - أَجْوَفٌ

When 2nd Root Letter is و or ي

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْفَالٌ	إِنْفِيلاً	يَنْفَالُ	إِنْفَالَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْفَالٌ		لَا تَنْفَلُ	إِنْفَلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To be demolished	إِنْهِيَارًا	يَنْهَارُ	إِنْهَارَ

ناقصٌ - Naqisun

When 3rd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْفَعٍ	إِنْفِعَاءٌ	يَنْفَعِي	إَنْفَعَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْفَعِي		لَا تَنْفَعِ	إِنْفَعِ

--	--	--

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To be appropriate	إِنْبَغَاءٌ	يَنْبَغِي	إِنْبَغَى
To refrain/end	إِنْتِهَاءٌ	يَنْتَهِي	إِنْتَهَى

لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are **و** or **ي**

لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are **و** or **ي**

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُنْقَلٌ	إِنْفِلَآءٌ	يَنْقَلُ	إِنْقَلَّ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُنْقَلٌ	لا تَنْقَلْ	اِنْقَلْ
	لا تَنْقَلْ	اِنْقَلْ
	لا تَنْقِلْ	اِنْقِلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To be dropped	اِنْقِضَا	يَنْقُضُ	اِنْقَضَ
To be split	اِنْشِقَاقًا	يَنْشِقُ	اِنْشَقَّ

إِفْتَعَلَ يَفْتَعِلُ - Family 8

مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

The 1st Root Letter is Hamza ء

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّعِلٌ	إِتِّعَالًا	يُتَّعِلُ	إِتَّعَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّعَلٌ	إِتِّعَالًا	يُتَّعَلُ	أُتِّعِلَ

Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَعَلِّ	لَا تَتَعَلِّ	إِتَعَلِّ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To take	إِتَّخَاذًا	يَتَّخِذُ	إِتَّخَذَ
To follow	إِتِّبَاءً	يَتَّبِعُ	إِتَّبَعَ
To gather and plot	إِتِّمَارًا	يَأْتِمِرُ	إِئْتَمَرَ

مثال - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is ي or و

Example of Family 8 – Using و ح د

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّحِدٌ	اِتِّحَادًا	يَتَّحِدُ	اِتَّحَدَ
The one who is uniting	To unite	He is uniting	He united
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُتَّحَدٌ	اِتِّحَادًا	يُتَّحَدُ	اُتِّحِدَ
The one who is united	To unite	He is being united	He was united
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُتَّحَدٌ		لَا تَتَّحِدُ	اِتَّحِدْ
Time and Place of uniting		You (Male) don't unite!	You (Male) unite!

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To lean on	إِتِّكَاءٌ	يَتَّكِيُ	إِتَّكَأَ
To unite	إِتِّحَادًا	يَتَّحِدُ	إِتَّحَدَ

أَجْوَافُن - أَجْوَفُ

When 2nd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَالٌ	إِفْتِيَالًا	يَفْتَالُ	إِفْتَالَ

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَالٌ	إِفْتِيَالًا	يُفْتَالُ	أُفْتِيلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفْتَالٌ		لَا تَفْتَلْ	إِفْتَلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To choose	إِخْتِيَارًا	يَخْتَارُ	إِخْتَارَ

ناقص - Naqisun

When 3rd Root Letter is و or ي

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: و or ي

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَعٍ	إِفْتِعَاءً	يُفْتَعِي	إِفْتَعَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَعًى	إِفْتِعَاءً	يُفْتَعَى	أُفْتَعِيَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُفْتَعًى	لَا تَفْتَعِ		إِفْتَعِ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To meet	اِلْتِقَاءٌ	يَلْتَقِي	اِلْتَقَى
To forge a lie	اِفْتِرَاءٌ	يَفْتَرِي	اِفْتَرَى
To be committed to guidance	اِهْتِدَاءٌ	يَهْتَدِي	اِهْتَدَى
To seek	اِبْتِغَاءٌ	يَبْتَغِي	اِبْتَغَى
To claim	اِدِّعَاءٌ	يَدَّعِي	اِدَّعَى
To end	اِنْتِهَاءٌ	يَنْتَهِي	اِنْتَهَى
To test	اِبْتِلَاءٌ	يَبْتَلِي	اِبْتَلَى
To buy/sell	اِشْتِرَاءٌ	يَشْتَرِي	اِشْتَرَى

لَفِيفٌ مَّفْرُوقٌ - Lafeefun Mafrukun

When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are **و** or **ي**

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To protect/be on guard	إِتْقَاءٌ	يَتَّقِي	إِتَّقَى

Lafeefun Makrunun - لَفِيفٌ مَقْرُونٌ

When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

Moodaarefun - مُضَاعَفٌ

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَلٌ	إِفْتِلَالًا	يُفْتَلُ	إِفْتُتِلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُفْتَلٌ	إِفْتِلَالًا	يُفْتَلُ	أُفْتُتِلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُفْتَلٌ		لا تَفْتَلُ لا تَفْتَلِ لا تَفْتَلِ	إِفْتُتِلْ إِفْتُتِلِ إِفْتُتِلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
---------	--------	---------------	------------

To turn back	إِرْتَدَادًا	يَرْتَدُّ	إِرْتَدَّ
To force	إِضْطِرَارًا	يَضْطَرُّ	إِضْطَرَّ
To intensify	إِشْتِدَادًا	يَشْتَدُّ	إِشْتَدَّ
To shake	إِهْتِرَازًا	يَهْتَرُّ	إِهْتَرَّ

Family 9 - اِفْعَلَّ يَفْعَلُّ

No irregular verbs

إِسْتَفْعَلَ يَسْتَفْعِلُ - Family 10

مَهْمُوزٌ - Mahmuzun

When one of the Root Letters is a Hamza ء

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To mock	إِسْتِهْزَاءٌ	يَسْتَهْزِي	إِسْتَهْزَأَ
To seek permission	إِسْتِئْذَانًا	يَسْتَأْذِنُ	إِسْتَأْذَنَ

مِثَالٌ - Mithalun

When 1st Root Letter is ي or و

Example of Family 10 – Using وق د

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَوْقِدٌ	إِسْتِيقَادًا	يَسْتَوْقِدُ	إِسْتَوْقَدَ
The one who is lighting a fire	To light a fire	He is lighting a fire	He lit a fire
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَوْقَدٌ	إِسْتِيقَادًا	يُسْتَوْقَدُ	أُسْتُوقِدَ
The thing that is lit	To light a fire	It is being lit	It was lit
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَوْقَدٌ		لَا تَسْتَوْقِدُ	إِسْتَوْقِدْ
Time and Place of lighting a fire		You (Male) don't light a fire!	You (Male) light a fire!

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To be certain	إِسْتَيْقَانًا	يَسْتَيْقِنُ	إِسْتَيْقَنَ
To try to light a fire	إِسْتِيقَادًا	يَسْتَوْقِدُ	إِسْتَوْقَدَ

أَجُوفٌ - Ajwafun

When 2nd Root Letter is ي or و

The 2nd Root Letter is made a Vowel: ي or و

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفِيلٌ	إِسْتِفَالَةٌ	يَسْتَفِيلُ	إِسْتَفَالَ

Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَقَالٌ	إِسْتِقَالَةٌ	يُسْتَقَالُ	أُسْتُفِيلَ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَقَالٌ		لَا تَسْتَفِلْ	إِسْتَفِلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To respond	إِسْتِجَابَةٌ	يَسْتَجِيبُ	إِسْتَجَابَ
To be able	إِسْتِطَاعَةٌ	يَسْتَطِيعُ	إِسْتَطَاعَ
To establish/act straight	إِسْتِقَامَةٌ	يَسْتَقِيمُ	إِسْتَقَامَ
To seek protection	إِسْتِعَاذَةٌ	يَسْتَعِذُّ	إِسْتَعَاذَ

To seek help	إِسْتَعَانَةً	يَسْتَعِينُ	إِسْتَعَانَ
To seek water	إِسْتِغَاثَةً	يَسْتَغِيثُ	إِسْتَغَاثَ

ناقص - Naqisun

When 3rd Root Letter is **و** or **ي**

The 3rd Root Letter is made a Vowel: **و** or **ي**

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفْعٍ	إِسْتِفْعَاءً	يَسْتَفْعِي	إِسْتَفْعَى
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l

مُسْتَفْعِي	إِسْتِفْعَاءً	يُسْتَفْعَى	أُسْتُفْعِي
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)		Forbidding Form	Command Form
مُسْتَفْعِي		لَا تَسْتَفْعِ	إِسْتَفْعِ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To rise	إِسْتِعْلَاءً	يَسْتَعْلِي	إِسْتَعْلَى
To seek counsel	إِسْتِثْقَاءً	يَسْتَثْقِي	إِسْتَثَقَى
To seek drink	إِسْتِسْقَاءً	يَسْتَسْقِي	إِسْتَسَقَى
To hide	إِسْتِخْفَاءً	يَسْتَخْفِي	إِسْتَخْفَى

لَفِيفٌ مَفْرُوقٌ - LafeeFun Mafrukun

When 1st and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To demand one's due	إِسْتِيفَاءٌ	يَسْتَوْفِي	إِسْتَوْفَى

لَفِيفٌ مَّقْرُونٌ - Lafeefun Makrunun

When 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are و or ي

مُضَاعَفٌ - Moodaarefun

When the 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are the same

The 2nd and 3rd Root Letters are made the same: both are ل

Ism Far'il (Doer)	Masdar	Present Tense Fi'l	Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفِلٌّ	إِسْتِفْلًا	يُسْتَفِلُّ	إِسْتَفَلَ
Ism Mafool (the thing acted on)	Masdar	Passive Present Tense Fi'l	Passive Past Tense Fi'l
مُسْتَفَلٌّ	إِسْتِفْلًا	يُسْتَفَلُّ	أُسْتَفِلَّ
Zharf (Place/Time of Action)	Forbidding Form		Command Form
مُسْتَفَلٌّ	لا تَسْتَفِلُّ لا تَسْتَفِلَّ لا تَسْتَفِلْ		إِسْتَفِلَّ إِسْتَفِلْ إِسْتَفِلْ

Meaning	Masdar	Present Tense	Past Tense
To cause to slip	إِسْتِزْلَاً	يَسْتِزِلُ	إِسْتَزَلَ
To scorn	إِسْتِخْفَافًا	يَسْتَخِفُّ	إِسْتَخَفَّ

Verbs and Prepositions

Some prepositions (Harf) that come with certain Fi'ls/Verbs can slightly change the meaning

Fi'l	Meaning	Fi'l + Preposition	Meaning
ضَرَبَ	To strike	فِي + ضَرَبَ	To go forth in the land
ضَرَبَ	To strike	لِ + ضَرَبَ	To mention something
ضَرَبَ	To strike	عَلَى + ضَرَبَ	To be overshadowed
ضَرَبَ	To strike	مَثَلًا + ضَرَبَ	To give an example
قَضَى	To decree	بَيْنَ + قَضَى	To judge between
قَضَى	To decree	عَلَى + قَضَى	To kill
وَضَعَ	To put down	عَنْ + قَضَى	To remove
أَتَى	To come	بِ + أَتَى	To bring

بَغَى	To seek	عَلَى + بَغَى	To oppress
تَابَ	To repent	عَلَى + تَابَ	To accept repentance
جَاءَ	To come	بِ + جَاءَ	To bring
ذَهَبَ	To go	بِ + ذَهَبَ	To take away
ذَهَبَ	To go	عَنْ + ذَهَبَ	To remove from
رَضِيَ	To be contend	عَنْ + رَضِيَ	To be pleased with

Incomplete Verbs which make Noun Sentences

Common Incomplete Verbs (Fi'l Naqis)

Incomplete Verb	Meaning
Past Tense: كَانَ Present/Future Tense: يَكُونُ	It was With a Present Tense Fi'l – indicates a continuous past tense action With a Past Tense Fi'l – indicates a single past event It is
Past Tense: أَصْبَحَ Present/Future Tense: يُصْبِحُ	To become Became
Past Tense: ظَلَّ Present/Future Tense: يَظَلُّ	He/it Remained He/it Remains
Past Tense: مَا زَالَ	He/It continued – (if the مَا is removed it means “to desist” but with the مَا it means “to not desist” which means “to continue”)

Present/Future Tense: مَا يَزَالُ	He/It continues
Past Tense: مَا دَامَ	As long as (Past Tense translated in the Present Tense)
Past Tense: لَيْسَ	He is not/it is not (Past Tense translated in the Present Tense)

Some Fi'l Shuruee

Fi'l	Meaning
طَفِقَ يَطْفِقُ	To begin quickly
بَدَأَ يَبْدَأُ	To begin
جَعَلَ يَجْعَلُ	To begin – when used as a Fi'l Shuruee To make – when used normally
أَخَذَ يَأْخُذُ	To begin – when used as a Fi'l Shuruee To take/seize – when used normally

Some Fi'ls that use a Tamyeez

Fi'l	Meaning
مَلَأَ	To fill
زَادَ	To increase something or someone
إِزْدَادَ	To increase oneself
كَفَى	To be sufficient
سَاءَ	To be terrible
حَسُنَ	To be good

Conclusion

By this point it is hoped that the two main aims of this book and curriculum which were discussed in the Introduction to this book have been achieved:

1. Learning the foundations of Arabic grammar so that one can easily recite the Holy Quran and read the Hadiths of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, in Arabic and with understanding, with the hope this leads to acting on these two sources of guidance.
2. Taking a first strong step in understanding Arabic grammar so that one can study Arabic texts, such as interpretations of the Holy Quran and the Hadiths of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him.

We highly recommend every student to continue reviewing the contents of this curriculum and to seek further Islamic knowledge with the sole intention

of increasing one's sincere obedience to Allah, the Exalted, which involves using the blessings one has been granted in ways pleasing to Allah, the Exalted, as outlined in the Holy Quran and the traditions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, so that they obtain peace of mind and success in both worlds. Chapter 16 An Nahl, verse 97:

"Whoever does righteousness, whether male or female, while he is a believer - We will surely cause him to live a good life, and We will surely give them their reward [in the Hereafter] according to the best of what they used to do."

One must respect their teachers but their loyalty must always be to Allah, the Exalted, and not to their teachers or school of thought. Therefore, they must accept and act on whatever they learn from the Holy Quran and the traditions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, irrespective of if it lines up with their teacher's or their school of thought's opinion or not. Chapter 39 Az Zumar, verse 11:

"Say, "Indeed, I have been commanded to worship Allāh, [being] sincere to Him in religion.""

Over 500 Free eBooks on Good Character

500+ FREE English Books & Audiobooks / اردو کتب / کتب عربیة / Buku Melayu / বাংলা বই / Libros En Español / Livres En Français / Libri Italiani / Deutsche Bücher / Livros Portugueses:

<https://shaykhpod.com/books/>

Backup Sites for eBooks: <https://shaykhpodbooks.wordpress.com/books/>
<https://shaykhpodbooks.wixsite.com/books>
<https://shaykhpod.weebly.com>
<https://archive.org/details/@shaykhpod>

YouTube: <https://www.youtube.com/@ShaykhPod/playlists>

AudioBooks, Blogs, Infographics & Podcasts: <https://shaykhpod.com/>

Other ShaykhPod Media

Daily Blogs: www.ShaykhPod.com/Blogs

AudioBooks: <https://shaykhpod.com/books/#audio>

Pics: <https://shaykhpod.com/pics>

General Podcasts: <https://shaykhpod.com/general-podcasts>

PodWoman: <https://shaykhpod.com/podwoman>

PodKid: <https://shaykhpod.com/podkid>

Urdu Podcasts: <https://shaykhpod.com/urdu-podcasts>

Live Podcasts: <https://shaykhpod.com/live>

Subscribe to Receive Daily Blogs & Updates Via Email:

<http://shaykhpod.com/subscribe>

